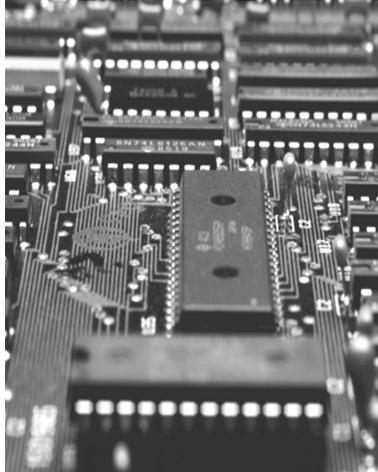


# TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter and Option Adapter User Guide

870 USE 101 00 Version 3



- Merlin Gerin
- Modicon
- Square D
- Telemecanique

**Schneider**  
 **Electric**

**Data, Illustrations, Alterations**

Data and illustrations are not binding. We reserve the right to alter products in line with our policy of continuous product development. If you have any suggestions for improvements or amendments or have found errors in this publication, please notify us by e-mail at [techcomm@modicon.com](mailto:techcomm@modicon.com).

**Training**

Schneider Electric Inc. offers suitable further training on the system.

**Hotline**

See addresses for Technical Support Centers at the end of this publication.

**Trademarks**

All terms used in this publication to denote Schneider Electric Inc. products are trademarks of Schneider Electric Inc.

All other terms used in this publication to denote products may be registered trademarks and/or trademarks of the corresponding corporations.

**Copyright**

All rights are reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including copying, processing or by online file transfer, without permission in writing from Schneider Electric Inc. You are not authorized to translate this document into any other language.

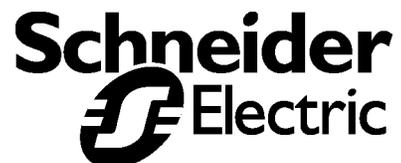
© 1999 Schneider Electric Inc. All rights reserved.

# **TSX Momentum**

## **M1 Processor Adapter and Option Adapter User Guide**

870 USE 101 00 Version 3.0

July 1999



---

## Document Set

---

TSX Momentum I/O Bases User Guide  
870 USE 002 00

TSX Momentum Interbus Communication Adapter User Manual  
870 USE 003 00

TSX Momentum FIPIO Communication Adapter User Manual  
870 USE 005 00

170 PNT Series Modbus Plus Communication Adapters for TSX Momentum  
User Guide  
870 USE 103 00

170 NEF Series Modbus Plus Communication Adapters for TSX Momentum  
User Guide  
870 USE 111 00

---

**Preface**

The data and illustrations found in this book are not binding. We reserve the right to modify our products in line with our policy of continuous product development. The information in this document is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by Schneider Electric, Inc.

Schneider Electric, Inc assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this document. If you have any suggestions for improvements or amendments or have found errors in this publication, please notify us through your distributor or local Square D office.

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, without express written permission of the Publisher, Schneider Electric, Inc.

**CAUTION**

All pertinent state, regional, and local safety regulations must be observed when installing and using this product.

For reasons of safety and to assure compliance with documented system data, repairs to components should be performed only by the manufacturer.

Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.

MODSOFT® is a registered trademark of Schneider Electric, Inc.

The following are trademarks of AEG Schneider Electric, Inc.:

Modbus	Modbus Plus	Concept
Modicon	984	

DIGITAL® and DEC® are registered trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation.

IBM® and IBM AT® are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.

Microsoft® and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

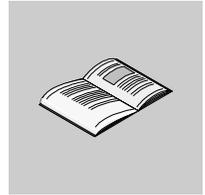
©Copyright 1999, Schneider Electric, Inc.

Printed in U.S.A.



---

# Contents



	<b>About This Book .....</b>	<b>15</b>
	Revision History .....	15
	Document Scope .....	16
	Validity Note .....	16
	Related Documentation .....	16
	User Comments .....	16
<b>Part I</b>	<b>Getting Started.....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Overview of TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapters .....</b>	<b>19</b>
Section 1.1	Introducing the M1 Processor Adapters .....	20
	Overview .....	20
	Front Panel Diagram .....	21
	Overview of Ports .....	22
	Memory and Performance Characteristics .....	24
	Power Supply .....	26
Section 1.2	Features of Each Processor Adapter .....	27
	Overview .....	27
	171 CCS 700 00 .....	28
	171 CCS 700 10 .....	31
	171 CCS 760 00 .....	34
	171 CCC 760 10 .....	37
	171 CCS 780 00 .....	40
	171 CCC 780 10 .....	43
	171 CCC 960 20 .....	46
	171 CCC 980 20 .....	50
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Overview of TSX Momentum Option Adapters .....</b>	<b>55</b>
Section 2.1	Introducing the TSX Momentum Option Adapters .....	56

	Basic Features of Option Adapters .....	56
Section 2.2	Serial Option Adapter .....	57
	Overview .....	57
	Front Panel Components .....	58
	Specifications .....	61
Section 2.3	Modbus Plus Option Adapter .....	63
	Overview .....	63
	Front Panel Components .....	64
	Specifications .....	67
Section 2.4	Redundant Modbus Plus Option Adapter .....	69
	Overview .....	69
	Front Panel Components .....	70
	Specifications .....	74
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Assembling TSX Momentum Components .....</b>	<b>77</b>
Section 3.1	Assembling a CPU .....	78
	Overview .....	78
	Assembling a Processor Adapter and I/O Base .....	79
	Disassembling a Processor Adapter from an I/O Base .....	82
Section 3.2	Assembling a CPU with an Option Adapter .....	84
	Overview .....	84
	Assembling a Processor Adapter and an Option Adapter .....	85
	Mounting the Assembled Adapters on the I/O Base .....	88
	Disassembling a Module with an Option Adapter .....	91
Section 3.3	Installing Batteries in an Option Adapter .....	95
	Installation Guidelines .....	95
Section 3.4	Labeling the CPU .....	97
	Guidelines for Labeling the CPU .....	97
<b>Part II</b>	<b>Communication Ports .....</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Using the Modbus Ports .....</b>	<b>87</b>
Section 4.1	Modbus Port 1 .....	102
	Overview .....	102
	Modbus Port 1 .....	103
	Cable Accessories for Modbus Port 1 .....	106
	Pinouts for Modbus Port 1 .....	107
Section 4.2	Modbus Port 2 .....	109
	Overview .....	109

	Modbus Port 2 .....	110
	Four-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks .....	113
	Two-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks .....	116
	Cable for Modbus RS485 Networks .....	119
	Connectors for Modbus RS485 Networks .....	122
	Terminating Devices for Modbus RS485 Networks .....	124
	Pinouts for Modbus RS485 Networks .....	125
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Using the Ethernet Port .....</b>	<b>131</b>
	Ethernet Port .....	132
	Network Design Considerations .....	133
	Security.....	135
	Cabling Schemes .....	136
	Pinouts .....	137
	Assigning Ethernet Address Parameters .....	138
	Using BOOTP Lite to Assign Address Parameters .....	141
	Reading Ethernet Network Statistics .....	142
	Description.....	143
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Using the I/O Bus Port .....</b>	<b>147</b>
	I/O Bus Port .....	148
	How I/O Bus Works .....	149
	Network Status Indication in the M1 Ethernet Module.....	150
	Guidelines for I/O Bus Networks .....	151
	Cable Accessories .....	153
	Pinouts .....	155
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Using the Modbus Plus Ports .....</b>	<b>157</b>
	Modbus Plus Features for Momentum .....	158
	Two Types of Modbus Plus Networks .....	159
	Standard Cabling Schemes .....	161
	Cluster Mode Cabling Schemes .....	163
	Cable Accessories for Modbus Plus Networks .....	167
	Pinouts and Wiring Diagrams for Modbus Plus Networks .....	170
	Modbus Plus Addresses .....	174
	Peer Cop .....	176
<b>Part III</b>	<b>Modsoft.....</b>	<b>179</b>
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Configuring an M1 CPU with Modsoft .....</b>	<b>181</b>
Section 8.1	Configuring the Processor Adapter .....	182
	Overview .....	182
	Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter .....	183
	Specifying an M1 Processor Type .....	186

	Default Configuration Parameters .....	188
	Changing the Range of Discrete and Register References .....	191
	Changing the Size of Your Application Logic Space .....	193
	Changing the Number of Segments .....	194
	Changing the Size of the I/O Map .....	196
	Establishing Configuration Extension Memory .....	198
Section 8.2	Configuring Option Adapter Features .....	199
	Overview .....	199
	Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil .....	200
	Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock .....	202
	Setting the Time .....	204
	Reading the Time-of-Day Clock .....	207
Section 8.3	Modifying Communication Port Parameters .....	208
	Overview .....	208
	Accessing the Port Editor Screen .....	209
	Parameters Which Should Not Be Changed .....	210
	Changing the Mode and Data Bits .....	211
	Changing Parity .....	213
	Changing the Baud Rate .....	214
	Changing the Modbus Address .....	215
	Changing the Delay .....	216
	Changing the Protocol on Modbus Port 2 .....	217
Section 8.4	I/O Mapping the Local I/O Points .....	218
	Accessing and Editing the I/O Map .....	218
<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Modsoft .....</b>	<b>223</b>
	Supporting an I/O Map for an I/OBus Network .....	224
	Accessing an I/O Map Screen for an I/OBus Network .....	226
	Editing the I/OBus I/O Map .....	228
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Configuring a Modbus Plus Network in Modsoft with Peer Cop .....</b>	<b>233</b>
Section 10.1	Getting Started .....	234
	Overview .....	234
	Accessing the Peer Cop Configuration Extension Screen .....	235
	The Default Peer Cop Screen .....	237
Section 10.2	Using Modbus Plus to Handle I/O .....	239
	Overview .....	239
	Devices on the Network .....	240
	Defining the Link and Accessing a Node .....	241
	Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information .....	244
	Specifying References for Input Data .....	248

	Accessing the Remaining Devices .....	252
	Completing the I/O Device Configuration in Peer Cop .....	254
Section 10.3	Passing Supervisory Data over Modbus Plus .....	257
	Overview .....	257
	Devices on the Network .....	258
	Configuring a Node to Exchange Data .....	259
	Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information .....	262
	Specifying References for Input and Output Data .....	263
	Defining the References for the Next Node .....	268
	Defining References for the Supervisory Computer .....	273
	Completing the Configuration .....	278
<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Saving to Flash in Modsoft .....</b>	<b>279</b>
	Preparing to Save to Flash .....	280
	Saving to Flash .....	281
<b>Part IV</b>	<b>Concept .....</b>	<b>283</b>
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Configuring an M1 CPU with Concept .....</b>	<b>285</b>
Section 12.1	Configuring the Processor Adapter .....	286
	Overview .....	286
	Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter .....	287
	Default Configuration Parameters .....	292
	Changing the Range of Discrete and Register References .....	295
	Changing the Size of the Full Logic Area .....	297
	Understanding the Number of Segments .....	298
	Changing the Size of the I/O Map .....	299
	Establishing Configuration Extension Memory for Peer Cop .....	301
Section 12.2	Configuring Option Adapter Features .....	304
	Overview .....	304
	Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil .....	305
	Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock .....	308
	Setting the Time .....	311
	Reading the Time-of-Day Clock .....	312
Section 12.3	Modifying Modbus Port Parameters .....	313
	Overview .....	313
	Accessing the Modbus Port Settings Dialog Box .....	314
	Changing the Baud Rate .....	315
	Changing Mode and Data Bits .....	316
	Stop Bit Should Not Be Changed .....	317
	Changing Parity .....	317
	Changing the Delay .....	318

	Changing the Modbus Address .....	319
	Changing the Protocol on Modbus Port 2 .....	320
Section 12.4	Configuring Ethernet Address Parameters and I/O Scanning.....	321
	Overview .....	321
	Accessing the Ethernet / I/O Scanner Screen.....	322
	Ethernet Configuration Options .....	324
	Setting Ethernet Address Parameters.....	325
	Configuring I/O .....	327
	Completing the I/O Configuration .....	331
Section 12.5	I/O Mapping the Local I/O Points .....	334
	Accessing and Editing the I/O Map .....	334
<b>Chapter 13</b>	<b>I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Concept .....</b>	<b>337</b>
	Supporting an I/O Map for an I/OBus Network.....	338
	Accessing an I/O Map Screen for an I/OBus Network .....	339
	Editing the I/OBus I/O Map.....	341
<b>Chapter 14</b>	<b>Configuring a Modbus Plus Network in Concept with Peer Cop .....</b>	<b>341</b>
Section 14.1	Getting Started .....	346
	Overview .....	346
	Accessing the Peer Cop Dialog Box .....	347
	Adjusting the Amount of Extension Memory .....	349
	Other Default Settings in the Peer Cop Dialog Box.....	350
Section 14.2	Using Modbus Plus to Handle I/O .....	352
	Overview .....	352
	Devices on the Network .....	353
	Changing the Peer Cop Summary Information .....	354
	Specifying References for Input Data.....	356
	Specifying References for Output Data.....	360
Section 14.3	Passing Supervisory Data over Modbus Plus .....	363
	Overview .....	363
	Devices on the Network .....	364
	Specifying References for Input and Output Data.....	365
	Defining the References for the Next Node.....	369
	Defining References for the Supervisory PLC.....	372
<b>Chapter 15</b>	<b>Saving to Flash with Concept .....</b>	<b>375</b>
	Saving to Flash.....	375

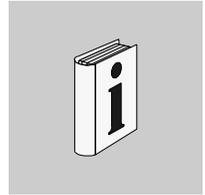
---

<b>Part V</b>	<b>Appendices .....</b>	<b>379</b>
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Ladder Logic Elements and Instructions .....</b>	<b>381</b>
	Standard Ladder Logic Elements .....	382
	DX Loadable Support .....	386
	A Special STAT Instruction.....	387
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes.....</b>	<b>393</b>
	<b>Index .....</b>	<b>397</b>



---

# About This Book



---

## Revision History

This is version 3.0 of this manual. The following information has been added or changed:

Version	Change
3.0	Descriptions of two new Processor Adapters, the 171 CCC 960 20 and 171 CCC 980 20
3.0	Description of the Ethernet port on the new Processor Adapters
3.0	Now able to configure any M1 CPU with Concept.
3.0	Instructions for configuring the Ethernet port with Concept.
2.2	Key features in the description of each Processor Adapter
2.2	New pinout diagram for Modbus RS485 Connector "T" (RJ45 base)
2.2	New pinout diagram for I/OBus cable.
2.1	New pinout diagram for Modbus RS485 Connector "T" (DB9 base)
2.1	Corrected part number for Modbus RS485/Modbus Plus 10 ft Interconnect Cable (170 MCI 021 80) and added part number for Modbus Plus 10 ft Drop Cable (170 MCI 021 20)
2.0	Descriptions of the 171 CCC 760 10 and 171 CCC 780 10 Processor Adapters
2.0	Details about Modbus RS485 networks for Momentum
2.0	Details about new Modbus Plus features for Momentum
2.0	Instructions for configuring selected M1 CPUs with Concept
2.0	Description of the 170 CPS 110 00 TIO Power Supply module

The most recent version of this manual is available on our web site, [www.modicon.com](http://www.modicon.com).

---

*Continued on next page*

**Document Scope** This manual contains complete information about the TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapters, Option Adapters and Ethernet Adapters. It does not contain information about TSX Momentum I/O bases or Communication Adapters.

---

**Validity Note** This manual is valid for Modsoft 2.6 and Concept 2.1.

---

**Related Documentation** You may find the following other manuals useful:

Title	Part Number
Momentum I/O Bases User Guide	870 USE 002 00
Momentum Modbus Plus PNT Series Communication Adapters User Guide	870 USE 103 00
Momentum Modbus Plus NEF Series Communication Adapters User Guide	870 USE 111 00

---

**User Comments** We welcome your comments about this document. You can reach us by e-mail at [techcomm@modicon.com](mailto:techcomm@modicon.com).

---

---

# Getting Started



---

## At a Glance

**Purpose** This part describes the M1 Processor Adapters and Option Adapters and explains how to assemble them.

---

**In This Part** This part contains the following chapters:

For Information On...	See Chapter...	On Page...
Overview of TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapters	1	19
Overview of TSX Momentum Option Adapters	2	55
Assembling TSX Momentum Components	3	77

---



---

# Overview of TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapters

# 1

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

A TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter can be snapped onto a Momentum I/O base to create a central processing unit (CPU) that provides programmable logic control to local and distributed I/O.

This chapter describes the eight M1 Processor Adapters.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

For This Topic...	See Section...	On Page...
Introducing the M1 Processor Adapters	1	20
Features of Each Processor Adapter	2	27

## Section 1.1

# Introducing the M1 Processor Adapters

### Overview

#### Purpose

A TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter stores and executes the application program, controlling the local I/O points of its host I/O base and distributed I/O devices on a common communication bus.

This section describes the front panel components, memory and performance characteristics of M1 Processor Adapters.

#### In This Section

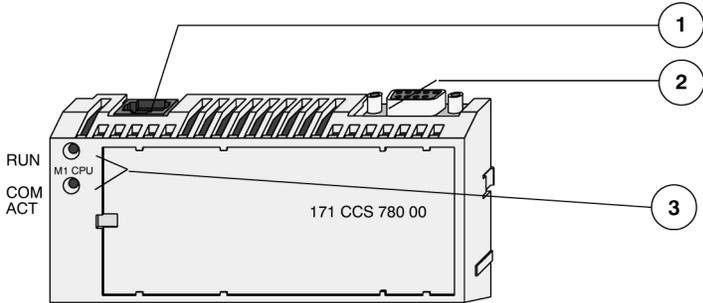
This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Front Panel illustration	21
Overview of Ports	22
Memory and Performance Characteristics	24
Power Supply	26

## Front Panel illustration

**Introduction** This section provides an illustration of a typical M1 Processor Adapter.

**Illustration** A typical Processor Adapter is shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Standard port connector
2	Optional second port connector
3	LED indicators

## Overview of Ports

### Introduction

Each Processor Adapter is equipped with at least one Modbus or Ethernet port. Some models also have a second port. The ports allow the Processor Adapter to communicate with:

- Programming panels
- Network I/O points under its control
- Network supervisory computers

### Ports Per Processor Adapter

The following table indicates which ports are available with each Processor Adapter:

Processor Adapter	Standard		Optional	
	Ethernet Port	Modbus Port 1	Modbus Port 2	I/O Bus Port
171 CCS 700 00		x		
171 CCS 700 10		x		
171 CCS 760 00		x		x
171 CCC 760 10		x		x
171 CCS 780 00		x	x	
171 CCC 780 10		x	x	
171 CCC 960 20	x			x
171 CCC 980 20	x		x	

### Ethernet Port

The Ethernet port is a standard, twisted pair, Ethernet 10BASE-T port which can communicate with programming panels, other M1 Processor Adapters with Ethernet ports, and with other Ethernet products. This port has an RJ45 connector, with an industry standard pinout.

### Modbus Port 1

Modbus Port 1 is a general-purpose asynchronous serial port with dedicated RS232 slave functionality. This port has an RJ45 connector.

*Continued on next page*

## Overview of Ports, Continued

---

### **Modbus Port 2**

Modbus Port 2 is a general-purpose asynchronous serial port with dedicated RS485 slave functionality. This port has a 9-pin D connector.

---

### **I/OBus Port**

The I/OBus port is used to control and communicate with other network (non-local) I/O modules under the control of the CPU. This port has a 9-pin D connector.

---

## Memory and Performance Characteristics

---

### Introduction

Processor Adapters are equipped with internal memory and Flash RAM. This section explains those two types of memory and describes the memory size and performance characteristics of each Processor Adapter.

---

### Internal Memory

Internal memory includes user memory and state RAM:

- User memory contains the control logic program and such system overhead as the Processor Adapter configuration, I/O mapping, checksum and system diagnostics.
- State RAM is the area in memory where all the input and output references for program and control operations are defined and returned.

The user may change the way internal memory is allocated by adjusting parameters for user memory and state RAM.

---

### Flash RAM

Flash RAM contains the executive firmware, which is the operating system for the PLC. It also contains a firmware kernel, which cannot be changed. The kernel is a small portion of memory that recognizes acceptable executive firmware packages and allows them to be downloaded to the Processor Adapter.

Space is also provided in Flash so that a copy of the user program and state RAM values can be stored. This back-up capability is particularly useful in configurations where no battery is used (ie., a Processor Adapter without an Option Adapter).

When the module is successfully communicating with other devices, if a ring adapter with battery back up is not present, it is recommended that you stop the processor and save the user program to Flash. This will save the processor's ARP cache and enable it to "remember" this information if power is lost or removed.

This procedure should also be followed whenever:

- A new or substitute device is installed on the network;
- The IP address of a network device has been changed.



**Note:** Some processors run both IEC and Ladder Logic and some run only IEC. See table following.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Memory and Performance Characteristics, Continued

**Memory Size and Clock Speed** The memory size and clock speed of each processor are described in the table below:

Processor Adapter	Internal Memory	User Memory*	Flash RAM	Clock Speed	984LL Logic Memory	IEC Program Memory
171 CCS 700 00	64K bytes	2.4K words	256K bytes	20MHz		-
171 CCS 700 10	64K bytes	2.4K words	256K bytes	32MHz		-
171 CCS 760 00	256K bytes	12K words	256K bytes	20MHz	12k	160k
171 CCC 760 10	512K bytes	18K words	512K bytes	32MHz	18k	240k
171 CCS 780 00	64K bytes	2.4K words	256K bytes	20MHz		-
171 CCC 780 10	512K bytes	18K words	512K bytes	32MHz	18k	240k
171 CCC 960 20	544K bytes	18K words	512K bytes	50 MHz	18k	-
171 CCC 980 20	544K bytes	18K words	512K bytes	50 MHz	18k	-

\* In a default configuration. The amount of user memory may be increased or decreased by adjusting other parameters.

**Input and Output References** The number of registers (for 3x and 4x references) and discretets (for 0x and 1x references) supported by each processor are described in the table below:

Processor Adapter	Registers	Discretets
171 CCS 700 00	2048	2048*
171 CCS 700 10	2048	2048*
171 CCS 760 00	4096	2048*
171 CCC 760 10	26032	8192 0x references 8192 1x references
171 CCS 780 00	2048	2048*
171 CCC 780 10	26032	8192 0x references 8192 1x references
171 CCC 960 20	26032	8192 0x references 8192 1x references
171 CCC 980 20	26032	8192 0x references 8192 1x references

\*This total may include any combination of 0x and 1x references.

## Power Supply

### Supplied by Base

A Processor Adapter requires 5 V, which is supplied by its I/O base.



**Note:** For information about the 171 CPS 111 00 TIO Power Supply Module, refer to 870 Use 101 00 V. 3 *TSX Momentum I/O Base User Guide*

---

## Section 1.2

# Features of Each Processor Adapter

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section provides a photograph, description of key features and LEDs, and specifications for each Processor Adapter.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics.

For This Topic...	See Page...
171 CCS 700 00	28
171 CCS 700 10	31
171 CCS 760 00	34
171 CCC 760 10	37
171 CCS 780 00	40
171 CCC 780 10	43
171 CCC 960 20	46
171 CCC 980 20	50

---

## 171 CCS 700 00

### Overview

This section describes the 171 CCS 700 00 Processor Adapter, including key features, a illustration and specifications.

### Key Features

The key features of this Processor Adapter are:

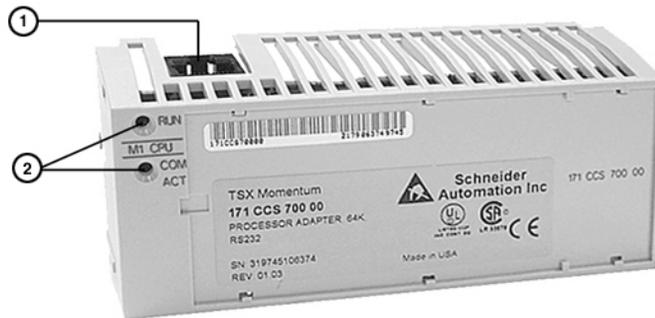
- Modbus Port 1
- 64K bytes of internal memory
- 20 MHz clock speed



**Note:** The Modbus port connector looks like a Ethernet port connector. Do not attempt to use an Modbus adapter as an Ethernet unit. Do not attempt to place an Ethernet connector in a Modbus connector.

### illustration

The connector and LED indicators are shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Modbus Port 1 connector
2	LED indicators

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCS 700 00, Continued

### LED Indicators

This Processor Adapter has two LED indicators, RUN and COM ACT. Their functions are described in the table below:

LED	Status	Function
Start up	Both	Single flash. Indicates good health.
RUN	Green	On continuously when the CPU has received power and is solving logic. Flashes an error pattern if the CPU is in kernel mode . (See <i>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes</i> on page 393)
	Off	CPU is not powered up or is not solving logic.
COM ACT	Green	May be on continuously or blinking. Indicates activity on Modbus port 1.
	Off	No activity on Modbus port 1.

### Specifications

The following table contains specifications for the 171 CCS 700 00 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter:

<b>Memory</b>	
Internal Memory	64K bytes
User Memory	2.4K words
Flash RAM	256K bytes
Clock Speed	20 MHz
<b>Input and Output References</b>	
Registers	2048
Discretes	2048 (any combination of 0x and 1x references)
<b>I/O Servicing</b>	
Local I/O	Services all the points on any host Momentum I/O base
Watchdog timeout	419 ms
Logic solve time	0.25 ms/k ladder logic instructions

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCS 700 00, Continued

---

### Specifications, Continued

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	42.5 g (1.5 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	25.9x61.02x125mm (1.01 x 2.37 x 4.86 in)
Material (Enclosures/ bezels)	Lexan
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA
RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry-standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40...+85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	RS232 is non-isolated from logic common
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

---

## 171 CCS 700 10

### Overview

This section describes the 171 CCS 700 10 Processor Adapter, including key features, a illustration and specifications.

### Key Features

The key features of this Processor Adapter are:

- Modbus Port 1
- 64K bytes of internal memory
- 32 MHz clock speed



**Note:** The Modbus port connector looks like a Ethernet port connector. Do not attempt to use a Modbus adapter as an Ethernet unit. Do not attempt to place an Ethernet connector in a Modbus connector.

### illustration

The connector and LED indicators are shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Modbus Port 1 connector
2	LED indicators

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCS 700 10, Continued

---

### LED Indicators

This Processor Adapter has two LED indicators, RUN and COM ACT. Their functions are described in the table below:

LED	Status	Function
Start up	Both	Single flash. Indicates good health.
RUN	Green	On continuously when the CPU has received power and is solving logic. Flashes an error pattern if the CPU is in kernel mode . (See <i>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes</i> on page 393)
	Off	CPU is not powered up or is not solving logic.
COM ACT	Green	May be on continuously or blinking. Indicates activity on Modbus port 1.
	Off	No activity on Modbus port 1.

### Specifications

The following table contains specifications for the 171 CCS 700 10 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter:

<b>Memory</b>	
Internal Memory	64K bytes
User Memory	2.4K words
Flash RAM	256K bytes
Clock Speed	32 MHz
<b>Input and Output References</b>	
Registers	2048
Discretes	2048 (any combination of 0x and 1x references)
<b>I/O Servicing</b>	
Local I/O	Services all the points on any host Momentum I/O base
Watchdog timeout	262 ms
Logic solve time	0.16 ms/k ladder logic instructions

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCS 700 10, Continued

### Specifications, Continued

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	42.5 g (1.5 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	25.9x61.02x125mm (1.01 x 2.37 x 4.86 in)
Material (Enclosures/ bezels)	Lexan
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA
RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry-standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40...+85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	RS232 is non-isolated from logic common
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

## 171 CCS 760 00

### Overview

This section describes the 171 CCS 760 00 Processor Adapter, including key features, a illustration and specifications.

### Key Features

The key features of this Processor Adapter are:

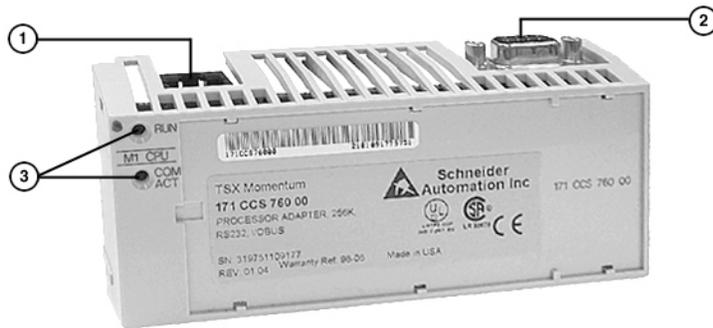
- Modbus Port 1
- I/OBus port
- 256K bytes of internal memory
- 20 MHz clock speed



**Note:** The Modbus port connector looks like a Ethernet port connector. Do not attempt to use an Modbus adapter as an Ethernet unit. Do not attempt to place an Ethernet connector in a Modbus connector.

### illustration

The connectors and LED indicators are shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Modbus Port 1 connector
2	I/OBus port connector
3	LED indicators

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCS 760 00, Continued

### LED Indicators

This Processor Adapter has two LED indicators, RUN and COM ACT. Their functions are described in the table below:

LED	Status	Function
Start up	Both	Single flash. Indicates good health.
RUN	Green	On continuously when the CPU has received power and is solving logic. Flashes an error pattern if the CPU is in kernel mode . (See <i>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes</i> on page 393)
	Off	CPU is not powered up or is not solving logic.
COM ACT	Green	May be on continuously or blinking. Indicates activity on Modbus port 1.
	Off	No activity on Modbus port 1.

### Specifications

The following table contains specifications for the 171 CCS 760 00 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter:

<b>Memory</b>	
Internal Memory	256K bytes
User Memory	12K words
Flash RAM	256K bytes
Clock Speed	20 MHz
<b>Input and Output References</b>	
Registers	4096
Discretes	2048 (any combination of 0x and 1x references)
<b>I/O Servicing</b>	
Local I/O	Services all the points on any host Momentum I/O base
Watchdog timeout	419 ms
Logic solve time	0.25 ms/k ladder logic instructions

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCS 760 00, Continued

---

### Specifications, Continued

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	42.5 g (1.5 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	25.9x61.02x125mm (1.01 x 2.37 x 4.86 in)
Material (Enclosures/ bezels)	Lexan
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA
RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry-standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40 ... +85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	RS232 and I/OBus are non-isolated from logic common
Ground continuity	30 A test on the exposed metal connector
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

---

## 171 CCC 760 10

### Overview

This section describes the 171 CCC 760 10 Processor Adapter, including key features, a illustration and specifications.

### Key Features

The key features of this Processor Adapter are:

- Modbus Port 1
- I/OBus port
- 512K bytes of internal memory
- 32 MHz clock speed



**Note:** The Modbus port connector looks like a Ethernet port connector. Do not attempt to use an Modbus adapter as an Ethernet unit. Do not attempt to place an Ethernet connector in a Modbus connector.

### Illustration

The connectors and LED indicators are shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Modbus Port 1 connector
2	I/OBus port connector
3	LED indicators

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCC 760 10, Continued

### LED Indicators

This Processor Adapter has two LED indicators, RUN and COM ACT. Their functions are described in the table below:

LED	Status	Function
Start up	Both	Single flash. Indicates good health.
RUN	Green	On continuously when the CPU has received power and is solving logic. Flashes an error pattern if the CPU is in kernel mode . (See <i>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes</i> on page 393)
	Off	CPU is not powered up or is not solving logic.
COM ACT	Green	May be on continuously or blinking. Indicates activity on Modbus port 1.
	Off	No activity on Modbus port 1.

### Specifications

The following table contains specifications for the 171 CCC 760 10 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter:

<b>Memory</b>	
Internal Memory	512K bytes
User Memory	18K words
Flash RAM	512K bytes
Clock Speed	32 MHz
<b>Input and Output References</b>	
Registers	26032
Discretes	8192 0x references 8192 1x references
<b>I/O Servicing</b>	
Local I/O	Services all the points on any host Momentum I/O base
Watchdog timeout	262 ms
Logic solve time	0.16 ms/k ladder logic instructions

*Continued on next page*

**171 CCC 760 10, Continued****Specifications,  
Continued**

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	42.5 g (1.5 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	25.9x61.02x125mm (1.01 x 2.37 x 4.86 in)
Material (Enclosures/ bezels)	Lexan
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA
RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry- standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40 ... +85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	RS232 and I/OBus are non-isolated from logic common
Ground continuity	30 A test on the exposed metal connector
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

## 171 CCS 780 00

### Overview

This section describes the 171 CCS 780 00 Processor Adapter, including key features, a illustration and specifications.

### Key Features

The key features of this Processor Adapter are:

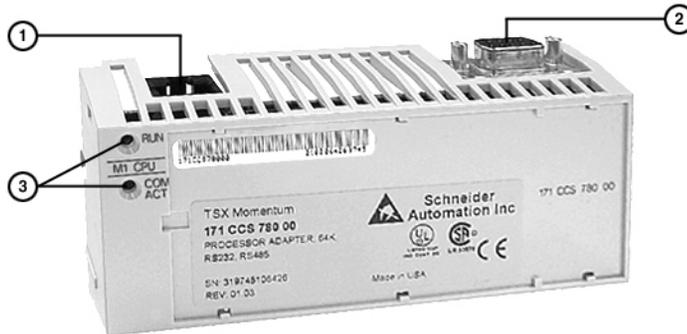
- Modbus Port 1
- Modbus Port 2
- 64K bytes of internal memory
- 20 MHz clock speed



**Note:** The Modbus port connector looks like a Ethernet port connector. Do not attempt to use an Modbus adapter as an Ethernet unit. Do not attempt to place an Ethernet connector in a Modbus connector.

### Illustration

The connectors and LED indicators are shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Modbus Port 1 connector
2	Modbus Port 2 connector
3	LED indicators

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCS 780 00, Continued

### LED Indicators

This Processor Adapter has two LED indicators, RUN and COM ACT. Their functions are described in the table below:

LED	Status	Function
Start up	Both	Single flash. Indicates good health.
RUN	Green	On continuously when the CPU has received power and is solving logic. Flashes an error pattern if the CPU is in kernel mode . (See <i>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes</i> on page 393)
	Off	CPU is not powered up or is not solving logic.
COM ACT	Green	May be on continuously or blinking. Indicates activity on Modbus port 1.
	Off	No activity on Modbus port 1.

### Specifications

The following table contains specifications for the 171 CCS 780 00 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter:

<b>Memory</b>	
Internal Memory	64K bytes
User Memory	2.4K words
Flash RAM	256K bytes
Clock Speed	20 MHz
<b>Input and Output References</b>	
Registers	2048
Discretes	2048 (any combination of 0x and 1x references)
<b>I/O Servicing</b>	
Local I/O	Services all the points on any host Momentum I/O base
Watchdog timeout	419 ms
Logic solve time	0.25 ms/k ladder logic instructions

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCS 780 00, Continued

### Specifications, Continued

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	42.5 g (1.5 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	25.9x61.02x125mm (1.01 x 2.37 x 4.86 in)
Material (Enclosures/ bezels)	Lexan
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA
RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry-standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40 ... +85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	RS232 and RS485 are non-isolated from logic common
Ground continuity	30 A test on the exposed metal connector
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

## 171 CCC 780 10

### Overview

This section describes the 171 CCC 780 10 Processor Adapter, including key features, a illustration and specifications.

### Key Features

The key features of this Processor Adapter are:

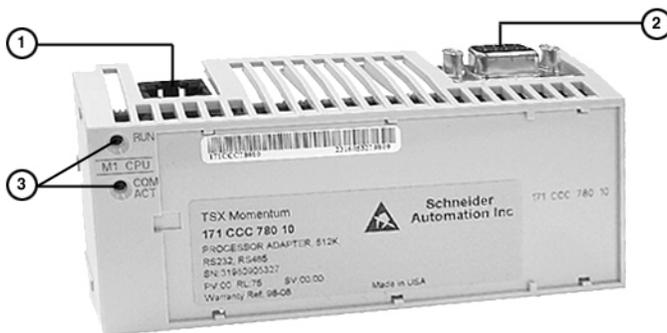
- Modbus Port 1
- Modbus Port 2
- 512K bytes of internal memory
- 32 MHz clock speed



**Note:** The Modbus port connector looks like a Ethernet port connector. Do not attempt to use an Modbus adapter as an Ethernet unit. Do not attempt to place an Ethernet connector in a Modbus connector.

### Illustration

The connectors and LED indicators are shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Modbus Port 1 connector
2	Modbus Port 2 connector
3	LED indicators

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCC 780 10, Continued

### LED Indicators

This Processor Adapter has two LED indicators, RUN and COM ACT. Their functions are described in the table below:

LED	Status	Function
Start up	Both	Single flash. Indicates good health.
RUN	Green	On continuously when the CPU has received power and is solving logic. Flashes an error pattern if the CPU is in kernel mode . (See <i>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes</i> on page 393)
	Off	CPU is not powered up or is not solving logic.
COM ACT	Green	May be on continuously or blinking. Indicates activity on Modbus port 1.
	Off	No activity on Modbus port 1.

### Specifications

The following table contains specifications for the 171 CCC 780 10 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter:

<b>Memory</b>	
Internal Memory	512K bytes
User Memory	18K words
Flash RAM	512K bytes
Clock Speed	32 MHz
<b>Input and Output References</b>	
Registers	26032
Discretes	8192 0x references 8192 1x references
<b>I/O Servicing</b>	
Local I/O	Services all the points on any host Momentum I/O base
Watchdog timeout	262 ms
Logic solve time	0.16 ms/k ladder logic instructions

*Continued on next page*

**171 CCC 780 10, Continued****Specifications,  
Continued**

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	42.5 g (1.5 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	25.9x61.02x125mm (1.01 x 2.37 x 4.86 in)
Material (Enclosures/ bezels)	Lexan
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA
RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry- standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40 ... +85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	RS232 and RS485 are non-isolated from logic common
Ground continuity	30 A test on the exposed metal connector
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

## 171 CCC 960 20

### Overview

This section describes the 171 CCC 960 20 Processor Adapter, including key features, a illustration and specifications.

### Key Features

The key features of this Processor Adapter are:

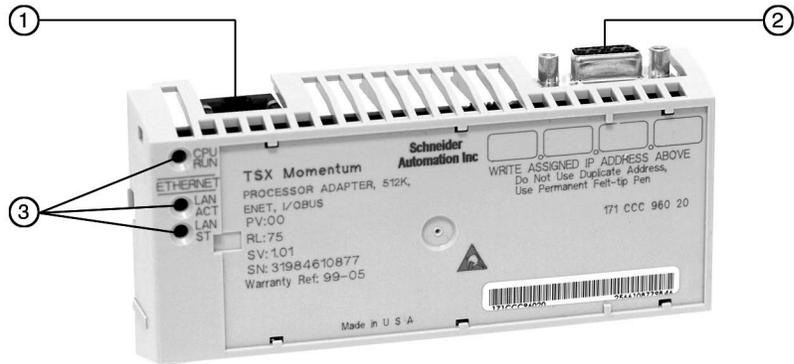
- Ethernet port
- I/OBus port
- 544K bytes of internal memory
- 50 MHz clock speed



**Note:** The Ethernet port connector looks like a Modbus port connector. Do not attempt to use an Ethernet adapter as a Modbus unit. Do not attempt to place a Modbus connector in an Ethernet connector.

### Illustration

The connectors and LED indicators are shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Ethernet port connector
2	I/OBus port connector
3	LED indicators

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCC 960 20, Continued

### LED Indicators

This Processor Adapter has three LED indicators, RUN, LAN ACT(IVE), and LAN ST(ATUS). Their functions are described in the table below:

LED	Indicator Pattern	Status
Start up	Both	Single flash. Indicates good health.
<b>RUN</b>	Green	On continuously when the CPU has received power and is solving logic. Flashes an error pattern if the CPU is in kernel mode. (See <i>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes</i> on page 393)
	Off	CPU is not powered up or is not solving logic.
<b>LAN ACT</b>	Green	May be on continuously or blinking. Indicates activity on Ethernet port.
	Off	No activity on Ethernet port.
<b>LAN ST</b>	Green	On continuously during normal operation.
		Fast blink indicates normal Ethernet initialization at power-up.
		3 flashes indicates no 10BASE-T link pulse detected. Check cable and hub.
		4 flashes indicates duplicate IP address detected.
	5 flashes indicates no IP address available.	
Off	No valid MAC address.	

### Specifications

The following table contains specifications for the 171 CCC 960 20 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter:

Memory	
Internal Memory	544K bytes
User Memory	18K words
Flash RAM	512K bytes
Clock Speed	50 MHz

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCC 960 20, Continued

---

**Specifications,**  
Continued

<b>Input and Output References</b>	
Registers	26032
Discretes	8192 0x references 8192 1x references
<b>I/O Servicing</b>	
Local I/O	Services all the points on any host Momentum I/O base
Watchdog timeout	335 ms
Logic solve time	See formula, following
<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	42.5 g (1.5 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	25.9x61.02x125mm (1.01 x 2.37 x 4.86 in)
Material (Enclosures/ bezels)	Lexan
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA
RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry- standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCC 960 20, Continued

### Specifications, Continued

Storage Conditions	
Temperature	-40 ... +85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Safety Parameters	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	Ethernet is isolated from logic common 500 VDC
Ground continuity	30 A test on the exposed metal connector
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

### Formula

The following formula applies to the M1E Processor Adapter.

Scan time = (0.25 msec/ethernet device + 0.002 msec/word) + 0.13 msec/K of logic + 0.40 msec + MBPlustime



#### Note:

- Modbus Plus communications will slow the M1E. If there is no MB+ ring card then MBPlustime = 0.
- If there is a MB+ ring card, then each scan will be extended 0.3 Msec *even if there is no message*.
- Modbus Messages will add from 1 to 2 msec per scan, depending on the length of the message.



#### Note:

- The formula above presumes that all MSTR blocks and all configured connections are set to go as fast as possible. In this case the M1E will attempt to exchange data with each device once per scan.
- If several devices are configured to communicate on a timed basis that is substantially larger than the scan time calculated, then the communications to those devices will be spread out over several scans. See Example, below.

### Example

You have 50 ENT modules connected to a single M1E with a configured time of 50 Msec each, a total of 4k user logic and no MB+ card. The scan time for all modules configured as fast as possible would be 12.5 Msec + 0.52 Msec + 0.40 Msec = 13.42 Msec. However, since the M1E will only communicate to 1/4 of the modules (12.5 Msec/50 Msec = 1/4) on any given scan, the corrected average scan time would be 1/4 x (12.5) + 0.52 + 0.40  $\cong$  4.1 Msec.

## 171 CCC 980 20

### Overview

This section describes the 171 CCC 980 20 Processor Adapter, including key features, a illustration and specifications.

### Key Features

The key features of this Processor Adapter are:

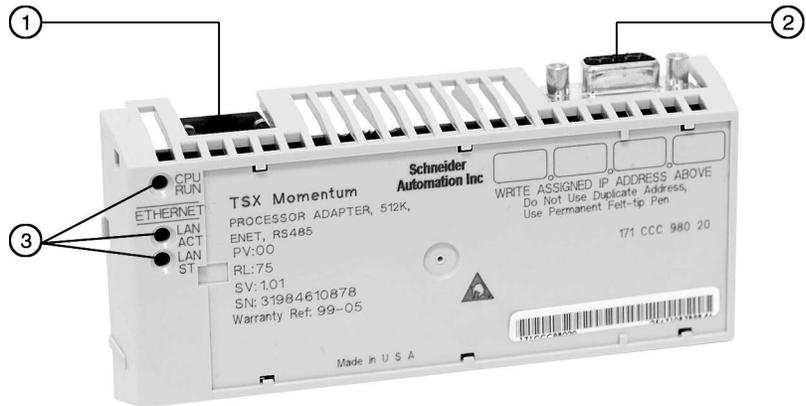
- Ethernet port
- Modbus Port 2 / RS485 only
- 544K bytes of internal memory
- 50 MHz clock speed



**Note:** The Ethernet port connector looks like a Modbus port connector. Do not attempt to use an Ethernet adapter as a Modbus unit. Do not attempt to place a Modbus connector in an Ethernet connector.

### Illustration

The connectors and LED indicators are shown in the following illustration:



Label	Description
1	Ethernet port connector
2	Modbus Port 2 connector
3	LED indicators

*Continued on next page*

**171 CCC 980 20, Continued****LED Indicators**

This Processor Adapter has three LED indicators, RUN, LAN ACT(IVE), and LAN ST(ATUS). Their functions are described in the table below:

LED	Indicator Pattern	Status
Start up	Both	Single flash. Indicates good health.
<b>RUN</b>	Green	On continuously when the CPU has received power and is solving logic. Flashes an error pattern if the CPU is in kernel mode. (See <i>Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes</i> on page 393)
	Off	CPU is not powered up or is not solving logic.
<b>LAN ACT</b>	Green	May be on continuously or blinking. Indicates activity on Ethernet port.
	Off	No activity on Ethernet port.
<b>LAN ST</b>	Green	On continuously during normal operation.
		Fast blink indicates normal Ethernet initialization at power-up.
		3 flashes indicates no 10BASE-T link pulse detected. Check cable and hub.
		4 flashes indicates duplicate IP address detected.
	5 flashes indicates no IP address available.	
Off	No valid MAC address.	

**Specifications**

The following table contains specifications for the 171 CCC 780 10 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter:

<b>Memory</b>	
Internal Memory	544K bytes
User Memory	18K words
Flash RAM	512K bytes
Clock Speed	50 MHz

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCC 980 20, Continued

---

### Specifications, Continued

<b>Input and Output References</b>	
Registers	26032
Discretes	8192 0x references 8192 1x references
<b>I/O Servicing</b>	
Local I/O	Services all the points on any host Momentum I/O base
Watchdog timeout	335 ms
Logic solve time	See formula, following
<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	42.5 g (1.5 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	25.9x61.02x125mm (1.01 x 2.37 x 4.86 in)
Material (Enclosures/ bezels)	Lexan
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA
RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry- standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.

*Continued on next page*

## 171 CCC 980 20, Continued

### Specifications, Continued

Storage Conditions	
Temperature	-40 ... +85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Safety Parameters	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	Ethernet is isolated from logic common 500 VDC
Ground continuity	30 A test on the exposed metal connector
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

### Formula

The following formula applies to the M1E Processor Adapter.

Scan time = (0.25 msec/ethernet device + 0.002 msec/word) + 0.13 msec/K of logic + 0.40 msec + MBPlustime



#### Note:

- Modbus Plus communications will slow the M1E. If there is no MB+ ring card then MBPlustime = 0.
- If there is a MB+ ring card, then each scan will be extended 0.3 Msec *even if there is no message*.
- Modbus Messages will add from 1 to 2 msec per scan, depending on the length of the message.



#### Note:

- The formula above presumes that all MSTR blocks and all configured connections are set to go as fast as possible. In this case the M1E will attempt to exchange data with each device once per scan.
- If several devices are configured to communicate on a timed basis that is substantially larger than the scan time calculated, then the communications to those devices will be spread out over several scans. See Example, below.

### Example

You have 50 ENT modules connected to a single M1E with a configured time of 50 Msec each, a total of 4k user logic and no MB+ card. The scan time for all modules configured as fast as possible would be 12.5 Msec + 0.52 Msec + 0.40 Msec = 13.42 Msec. However, since the M1E will only communicate to 1/4 of the modules (12.5 Msec/50 Msec = 1/4) on any given scan, the corrected average scan time would be 1/4 x (12.5) + 0.52 + 0.40  $\cong$  4.1 Msec.



---

# Overview of TSX Momentum Option Adapters

# 2

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

An Option Adapter may be inserted between the Processor Adapter and the I/O base to provide:

- A battery backup for the CPU
- A time-of-day clock
- Extra communication ports

This chapter describes the three types of TSX Momentum Option Adapters.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

For This Topic...	See Section...	On Page...
Introducing the TSX Momentum Option Adapters	1	56
Serial Option Adapter	2	57
Modbus Plus Option Adapter	3	63
Redundant Modbus Plus Option Adapter	4	69

---

## Section 2.1

# Introducing the TSX Momentum Option Adapters

### Basic Features of Option Adapters

---

#### Introduction

This section describes the basic features of all Option Adapters:

- Batteries
  - A time-of-day (TOD) clock
  - Communication port(s)
- 

#### Batteries

The batteries used to back up the CPU's user program and state RAM.

---

#### Time-of-Day Clock

The time-of-day clock allows you to use the date and time as an element in your user program.

---

#### Communication Ports

The three TSX Momentum Option Adapters are distinguished by the communications ports they offer, as shown in the table below:

Option Adapter	Communication Port(s)
172 JNN 210 32	Software-selectable RS232/RS485 serial port
172 PNN 210 22	One Modbus Plus port
172 PNN 260 22	Two Modbus Plus ports for a redundant (back-up) cable run

---

## Section 2.2

# Serial Option Adapter

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section describes the 172 JNN 210 32 Serial Option Adapter, including the front panel components and specifications.

---

**In This Section** This section includes the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Front Panel Components	58
Specifications	61

---

## Front Panel Components

---

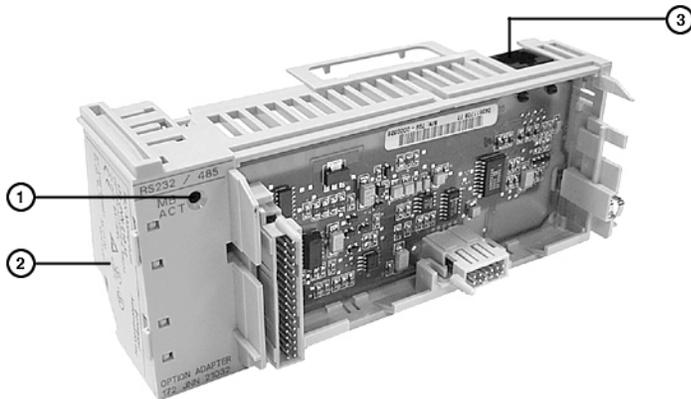
### Overview

The front panel includes:

- An LED indicator
  - Battery compartment
  - Modbus Port 2 connector
- 

### Illustration

The illustration below shows the location of LED indicator, the battery compartment, and the Modbus Port 2 connector.



Label	Description
1	LED indicator
2	Battery compartment door
3	Modbus Port 2 connector

---

*Continued on next page*

## Front Panel Components, Continued

### LED Indicator

This Option Adapter has one LED indicator, the Com Act indicator. Its functions are described in the table below.

LED	Status	Function
COM ACT	Green	May be on steadily or blinking. Indicates activity on the RS232/RS485 serial port.
	Off	No activity on the RS232/RS485 serial port.

### Modbus Port 2

Modbus Port 2 is a general-purpose asynchronous serial port with user-selectable RS232/RS485 slave functionality. The choice between RS232 and RS485 is made in the software.



**Note:** When this Option Adapter is assembled with a 171 CCS 780 00 Processor Adapter or a 171 CCC 780 10 Processor Adapter (with built-in Modbus Port 2), the Modbus Port 2 on the Option Adapter is electrically disabled. The TOD clock and the battery backup on the Option Adapter remain functional.

### Auto-Logout Feature On Modbus Port 2

If the RS232 port is chosen, auto-logout is supported. If a programming panel is logged into the CPU via the serial port and its cable gets disconnected, the Processor Adapter automatically logs out the port. This auto-logout feature is designed to prevent a lock-up situation that could prevent other host stations from logging in on other ports.

Auto-logout is not available for any RS485 port, including the RS485 option on the Serial Option Adapter. The user must log out of the processor using the programming software.

*Continued on next page*

## Front Panel Components, Continued

---

### Pinouts for Modbus Port 2

The 172 JNN 210 32 Serial Option Adapter uses the following pinouts:

Pin	For RS232	For RS485
1	DTR	RXD -
2	DSR	RXD +
3	TXD	TXD +
4	RXD	
5	signal common	signal common
6	RTS	TXD -
7	CTS	
8	cable shield	cable shield

---

## Specifications

### Specifications

This section provides the specifications for the 172 JNN 210 32 TSX Momentum Serial Option Adapter:

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	85.05 g (3 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	58.3 (on battery side) x 60.6 x 143.1mm
	(2.27 x 2.36 x 5.57 in)
Material (Enclosures/bezels)	Lexan
<b>Time-of-Day Clock</b>	
Accuracy	+/- 13 s/day
<b>Batteries</b>	
Type	AAA alkaline, two required two included with Option Adapter (in separate package)
Service life	< 30 days from the time a battery-low indication is received to actual battery failure @ 40degrees C maximum ambient temperature with the system continuously powered down.
Shelf life	In excess of 5 yr @ room temperature
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA

*Continued on next page*

---

## Specifications, Continued

---

### Specifications, Continued

RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry-standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40...+85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	RS232/485 is non-isolated from logic common
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li><li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li></ul>

---

## Section 2.3

# Modbus Plus Option Adapter

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section describes the 172 PNN 210 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapter, including the front panel components and specifications.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Front Panel Components	64
Specifications	67

---

## Front Panel Components

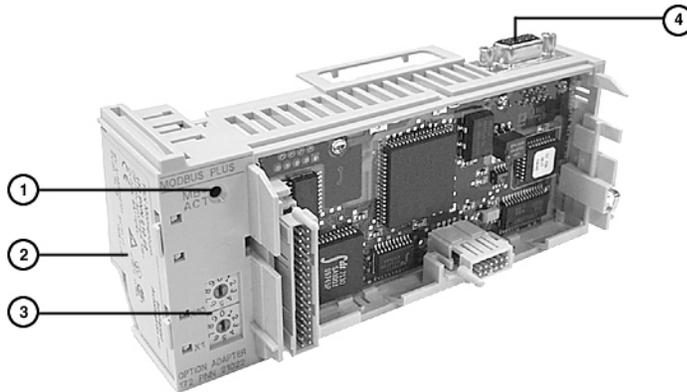
### Overview

The front panel includes:

- An LED indicator
- Battery compartment
- Address switches
- 9-pin D-shell connector for Modbus Plus communications

### Illustration

The illustration below shows the LED indicator, address switches, Modbus Plus connector, and battery compartment.



Label	Description
1	LED indicator
2	Battery compartment door
3	Address switches for Modbus Plus
4	9-pin D-shell connector for Modbus Plus communications

*Continued on next page*

## Front Panel Components, Continued

### LED Indicator

This Option Adapter has one LED indicator, the MB+ ACT indicator. This indicator flashes the following patterns, based on the status of the Modbus Plus node:

Pattern	Meaning
6 flashes/s	This is the normal operating state for the node. It is receiving and passing the network token. All nodes on a healthy network flash this pattern.
1 flash/s	The node is offline just after power-up or after exiting the 6 flashes/s mode. In this state, the node monitors the network and builds a table of active nodes. After being in this state for 5s, the node attempts to go to its normal operating state, indicated by 6 flashes/s.
2 flashes, then OFF for 2s	The node detects the token being passed among the other nodes, but never receives the token. Check the network for an open circuit or defective termination.
3 flashes, then OFF for 1.7s	The node is not detecting any tokens being passed among the other nodes. It periodically claims the token but cannot find another node to which to pass it. Check the network for an open circuit or defective termination.
4 flashes, then OFF for 1.4s	The node has detected a valid message from a node using a network address identical to its own address. The node remains in this state for as long as it continues to detect the duplicate address. If the duplicate address is not detected for 5s, the node changes to its 1 flash/s mode.
ON	Indicates an invalid node address.
OFF	Possible fault with Modbus Plus Option Adapter.

*Continued on next page*

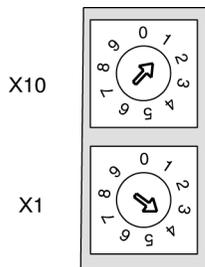
## Front Panel Components, Continued

---

### Modbus Plus Address Switches

The two rotary switches on the Option Adapter are used to set a Modbus Plus node address for the CPU module. The switches are shown in the following illustration. Their usage is described in detail in *Modbus Plus Addresses* on page 174.

The switches in this illustration are set to address 14.



## Specifications

### Specifications

This section provides the specifications for the 172 PNN 210 22 TSX Momentum Serial Option Adapter:

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	85.05 g (3 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	58.3 (on battery side) x 60.6 x 143.1mm
	(2.27 x 2.36 x 5.57 in)
Material (Enclosures/bezels)	Lexan
<b>Time-of-Day Clock</b>	
Accuracy	+/- 13 s/day
<b>Batteries</b>	
Type	AAA alkaline, two required. Two included with Option Adapter (in separate package).
Service life	< 30 days from the time a battery-low indication is received to actual battery failure @ 40degrees C maximum ambient temperature with the system continuously powered down.
Shelf life	In excess of 5 yr @ room temperature
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA

*Continued on next page*

---

## Specifications, Continued

### Specifications, Continued

---

RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry-standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40...+85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	500 V
Ground continuity	30 A test on the exposed metal connector
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>

---

## Section 2.4

# Redundant Modbus Plus Option Adapter

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section describes the 172 PNN 260 22 Redundant Modbus Plus Option Adapter, including the front panel components and specifications.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Front Panel Components	70
Specifications	74

---

## Front Panel Components

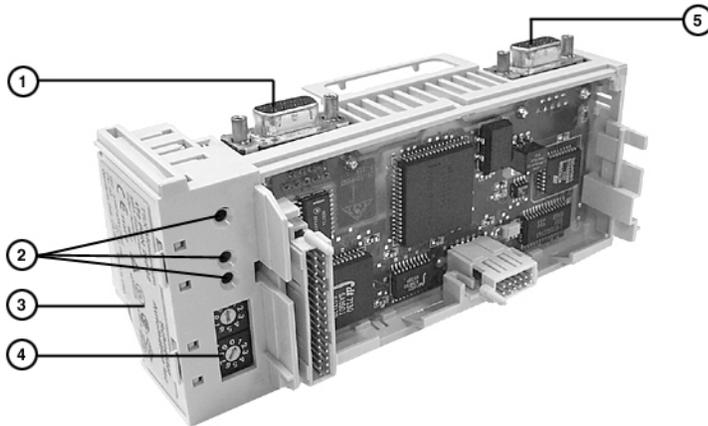
### Overview

The front panel includes:

- Two 9-pin D-shell connectors for Modbus Plus communications
- Three LED indicators
- Battery compartment
- Address switches

### Illustration

The illustration below shows the LED indicators, address switches, battery compartment and Modbus Plus connectors.



Label	Description
1	9-pin D-shell connector for Modbus Plus port A
2	Array of three LED indicators
3	Battery compartment door
4	Address switches for Modbus Plus
5	9-pin D-shell connector for Modbus Plus port B

*Continued on next page*

## Front Panel Components, Continued

### LED Indicators

This Option Adapter has three LED indicators. Their functions are described in the table below.

LED	Status	Function
MB+ ACT	Green	Indicates activity on one or both of the Modbus Plus ports (see the flash pattern table below)
	Off	No activity on either Modbus Plus port
ERR A	Red	Indicates a communications failure on Modbus Plus port A*
	Off	No problems detected on Modbus Plus port A
ERR B	Red	Indicates a communications failure on Modbus Plus port B*
	Off	No problems detected on Modbus Plus port B
* If you are not using redundant cabling on the Modbus Plus link (i.e., if only one of the ports is being used) the Error LED for the unused port will be on constantly when Modbus Plus communication occurs on the network.		

*Continued on next page*

## Front Panel Components, Continued

### MB+ ACT Flash Patterns

This table provides the patterns that the MB+ ACT indicator will flash to indicate the status of the Modbus Plus node.

Pattern	Meaning
6 flashes/s	This is the normal operating state for the node. It is receiving and passing the network token. All nodes on a healthy network flash this pattern.
1 flash/s	The node is offline just after power-up or after exiting the 6 flashes/s mode. In this state, the node monitors the network and builds a table of active nodes. After being in this state for 5s, the node attempts to go to its normal operating state, indicated by 6 flashes/s.
2 flashes, then OFF for 2s	The node detects the token being passed among the other nodes, but never receives the token. Check the network for an open circuit or defective termination.
3 flashes, then OFF for 1.7s	The node is not detecting any tokens being passed among the other nodes. It periodically claims the token but cannot find another node to which to pass it. Check the network for an open circuit or defective termination.
4 flashes, then OFF for 1.4s	The node has detected a valid message from a node using a network address identical to its own address. The node remains in this state for as long as it continues to detect the duplicate address. If the duplicate address is not detected for 5s, the node changes to its 1flash/s mode.
ON	Indicates an invalid node address.
OFF	Possible fault with Modbus Plus Option Adapter.

*Continued on next page*

---

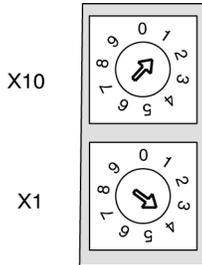
## Front Panel Components, Continued

---

### Modbus Plus Address Switches

The two rotary switches on the Option Adapter are used to set a Modbus Plus node address for the CPU module. The switches are shown in the following illustration. Their usage is described in detail in *Modbus Plus Addresses* on page 174.

The switches in this illustration are set to address 14.



---

### Modbus Plus Ports A and B

This Option Adapter has two Modbus Plus ports. Redundant cabling on the Modbus Plus network offers increased protection against cable faults or excessive noise bursts on either one of the two cable paths. When one of the channels experiences communication problems, error-free messaging can continue to be processed on the alternate path.

---

## Specifications

### Specifications

This section provides the specifications for the 172 PNN 260 22 TSX Momentum Serial Option Adapter:

<b>Mechanical</b>	
Weight	85.05 g (3 oz)
Dimensions (HxDxW)	58.3 (on battery side) x 60.6 x 143.1mm
	(2.27 x 2.36 x 5.57 in)
Material (Enclosures/bezels)	Lexan
<b>Time-of-Day Clock</b>	
Accuracy	+/- 13 s/day
<b>Batteries</b>	
Type	AAA alkaline, two required. Two included with Option Adapter (in separate package).
Service life	< 30 days from the time a battery-low indication is received to actual battery failure @ 40degrees C maximum ambient temperature with the system continuously powered down.
Shelf life	In excess of 5 yr @ room temperature
<b>Operating Conditions</b>	
Temperature	0 ... 60 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
Chemical interactions	Enclosures and bezels are made of Lexan, a polycarbonate that can be damaged by strong alkaline solutions
Altitude, full operation	2000m (6500ft)
Vibration	10 ... 57Hz @ 0.075mm displacement amplitude 57...150Hz @ 1g Ref. IEC 68-2-6 FC
Shock	+/-15g peak, 11ms, half sine wave Ref. IEC 68-2-27 EA

*Continued on next page*

## Specifications, Continued

### Specifications, Continued

RFI Susceptibility/ immunity	Meets CE mark requirements for open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry-standard enclosure, with access restricted to qualified service personnel.
<b>Storage Conditions</b>	
Temperature	-40...+85 degrees C
Humidity	5 ... 95% (noncondensing)
<b>Safety Parameters</b>	
Degree of protection	Unintentional access (UL 508 Type 1, NEMA250 Type 1, IP20 conforming to IEC529)
Di-electric strength	500 V
Ground continuity	30 A test on the exposed metal connectors
Agency Approvals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● UL 508, CSA, CUL, CE</li> <li>● FM class1, div2 pending</li> </ul>



---

# Assembling TSX Momentum Components

# 3

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

This chapter describes how to assemble and disassemble a TSX Momentum M1 CPU, using the following components:

- Processor Adapter
- I/O Base
- Option Adapter
- Label

It also describes how to install batteries in the Option Adapter.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

For Informon On...	See Section...	On Page...
Assembling a CPU	1	78
Assembling a CPU with an Option Adapter	2	84
Installing Batteries in an Option Adapter	3	95
Labeling the CPU	4	97

---

## Section 3.1

# Assembling a CPU

### Overview

---

#### Purpose

This section describes how to assemble a Processor Adapter with an I/O base and how to disassemble them.

---

#### In This Section

This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Assembling a Processor Adapter and I/O Base	79
Disassembling a Processor Adapter from an I/O Base	82

---

---

## Assembling a Processor Adapter and I/O Base

---

### Overview

A Processor Adapter can be snapped directly onto a Momentum I/O base, making connections at three points:

- The plastic snap extensions on the two sides of the M1 unit fit into the two slots on the sides of the I/O base
- The 12-pin connectors on the two units mate together

The components can be snapped together by hand – no assembly tools are required.

This section contains safety precautions for handling components and a procedure for assembling a Processor Adapter and an I/O base.

---



### CAUTION

#### ADAPTER MAY BE DAMAGED BY STC ELECTRICITY

Use proper ESD procedures when handling the adapter, and do not touch the internal elements. The adapter's electrical elements are sensitive to stc electricity.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in equipment damage.**

---



### CAUTION

#### ELECTRICAL CIRCUITRY MAY BE EXPOSED

Electrical circuitry on the I/O base may be exposed when a Momentum adapter is not mounted. Make sure that the I/O base is not under power when it does not have an adapter mounted on it. To make sure that power is not present, do not insert the wiring connectors to the I/O base until after the adapter has been mounted.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage and will void the product warranty.**

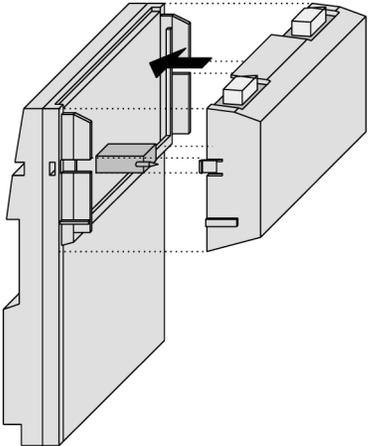
---

*Continued on next page*

## Assembling a Processor Adapter and I/O Base, Continued

**Procedure:**  
**Assembling a Processor Adapter and an I/O Base**

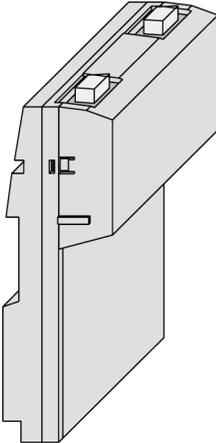
Follow the steps in the table below to assemble a Processor Adapter and an I/O base.

Step	Action
1	Choose a clean environment to assemble the I/O base and adapter to protect the circuitry from contaminon.
2	Make sure that the I/O base is not under power when you assemble the module.
3	Align the two plastic snap extensions on the Processor Adapter with the slots on the sides of the I/O base. The 12-pin connectors will automcally line up when the units are in this position. The two devices should be oriented so their communicon ports are facing out, on the back side of the assembly. 

*Continued on next page*

## Assembling a Processor Adapter and I/O Base, Continued

**Procedure:**  
**Assembling a  
 Processor  
 Adapter and an  
 I/O Base,**  
 Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>Push the Processor Adapter onto the base, gently pressing the locking tabs inward.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The locking tabs on each side of the Processor Adapter slide inside the I/O base and out through the locking slot. The 12-pin connectors on the two units are mated to each other in the process.</p> 

**Next Step**

Once the Processor Adapter has been assembled, it can be mounted on a DIN rail or surface mounted inside a panel enclosure. A TSX Momentum M1 CPU assembly is classified as open equipment. Open equipment should be installed in an industry-standard enclosure, and direct access must be restricted to qualified service personnel.

For a detailed description of installation procedures and grounding considerations, refer to the *TSX Momentum I/O Bases User Manual* (870 USE 002 00).

## Disassembling a Processor Adapter from an I/O Base

---

### Overview

This section contains safety precautions and a procedure for disassembling a Processor Adapter from an I/O base.

---



### CAUTION

#### ELECTRICAL CIRCUITRY MAY BE EXPOSED

Before removing an adapter from the base, disconnect the wiring connectors. Make sure that the I/O base is not under power when it does not have a Momentum adapter mounted on it.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage and will void the product warranty.**

---

### Tools Required

A flat-head screw driver.

---

### Procedure: Disassembling an Adapter from an I/O Base

Follow the steps in the table below to remove a Processor Adapter from an I/O base.

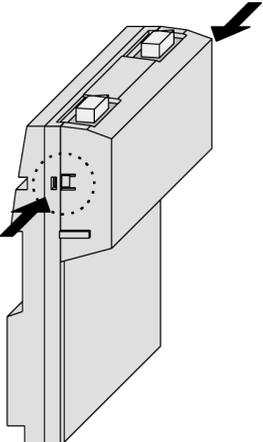
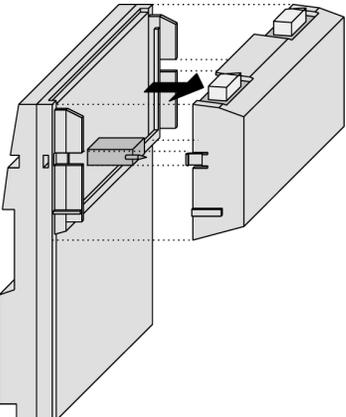
Step	Action
1	Choose a clean environment to disassemble the unit, in order to protect the circuitry from contaminon.
2	Make sure that the I/O base is not under power by removing the terminal connectors from the I/O base.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Disassembling a Processor Adapter from an I/O Base, Continued

**Procedure:**  
**Disassembling**  
**an Adapter from**  
**an I/O Base,**  
Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>Use a screwdriver to push the clips on both sides of the Processor Adapter inward, as shown in the illustration below.</p> 
4	<p>Lift adapter straight up and away from base, maintaining pressure on clips.</p> 

## Section 3.2

# Assembling a CPU with an Option Adapter

### Overview

---

#### Purpose

An Option Adapter may only be used in conjunction with a Processor Adapter. It may not be used alone with an I/O base.

This section describes how to add an Option Adapter when assembling a TSX Momentum module and how to remove an Option Adapter from the assembled module.

---

#### In This Section

This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Assembling a Processor Adapter and an Option Adapter	85
Mounting the Assembled Adapters on the I/O Base	88
Disassembling a Module with an Option Adapter	91

---

## Assembling a Processor Adapter and an Option Adapter

---

### Overview

If a TSX Momentum Option Adapter is used, it is mounted between a Momentum M1 Processor Adapter and a Momentum I/O base in a three-tiered stack.

This section contains guidelines, safety precautions and a procedure for assembling a Processor Adapter and an Option Adapter.

The next section describes how to mount the assembled adapters on an I/O base.

---

### Guidelines

We recommend that you snap together the Option Adapter and the M1 Processor Adapter before mounting them on the I/O base.

---

### Connection Points Between Adapters

The Option Adapter and M1Processor connect at these four points:

- The plastic snap extensions on the two sides of the M1 fit into the two slots on the sides of the Option Adapter
  - The 12-pin connectors on the center of the back walls of the two units mate together
  - The 34-pin processor extension connectors that run along the left sidewalls of the components mate together
- 

### No Tools Required

The components can be snapped together by hand; no assembly tools are required. A flat-head screw driver is required to disassemble the unit.

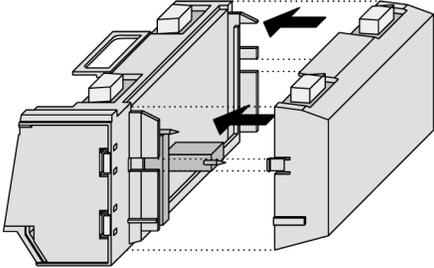
---

*Continued on next page*

## Assembling a Processor Adapter and an Option Adapter, Continued

**Procedure:**  
**Assembling an Option Adapter and Processor**

Follow the steps in the table below to assemble an option adapter and an M1 processor.

Step	Action
1	Choose a clean environment to assemble the Option Adapter and processor to protect the circuitry from contaminon.
2	<p>Align the two plastic snap extensions on the sides of the M1 Processor Adapter with the slots on the sides of the Option Adapter.</p> <p>The 12-pin connectors and processor extension connectors will automcally line up when the units are in this position. The two devices should be oriented so that their communicon ports are facing out on the back side of the assembly.</p>
	<p><b>CAUTION</b>  <b>PIN ALIGNMENT</b></p> <p>Proper assembly requires that the 34 pins on the processor extension connector be aligned correctly with the mng socket on the M1 processor adapter. Do not connect one side and try to rotate the M1 onto the option adapter.</p> <p><b>Failure to observe this precaution can result in equipment damage.</b></p>
3	<p>Push the Processor Adapter onto the Option Adapter, gently pressing the locking tabs inward.</p>  <p><b>Result:</b> The locking tabs on each side of the Processor Adapter slide inside the Option Adapter and out through the locking slot. The 12-pin and 34-pin connectors on the two units are mated to each other in the process.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Assembling a Processor Adapter and an Option Adapter, Continued

---

### **Next Step**

Follow the directions in the next section to mount the assembled adapters on the I/O base.

---

## Mounting the Assembled Adapters on the I/O Base

---

### Overview

This section gives guidelines, safety precautions and a procedure for mounting the assembled Processor and Option Adapter on an I/O base.

---

### Guidelines

The assembled adapters connect with the I/O base at these seven points:

- Two plastic snaps on the front of the Option Adapter fit into two slots on the front of the I/O base
  - The plastic snap extensions on the two sides of the Option Adapter fit into the two slots on the sides of the I/O base
  - The 12-pin connectors on the center of the back walls of the two units mate together
  - The plastic stirrup on the back of the Option Adapter clips onto the bottom of the I/O base
- 



### CAUTION

#### ELECTRICAL CIRCUITRY MAY BE EXPOSED

Electrical circuitry on the I/O base may be exposed when an adapter is not mounted. Make sure that the I/O base is not under power whenever it does not have a Momentum adapter mounted on it.

To make sure that power is not present, do not insert the wiring connectors to the I/O base until after the adapter has been mounted. When more than one connector is on the I/O base, remove all connectors to prevent the unit from receiving power from an unexpected source.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage and will void the product warranty.**

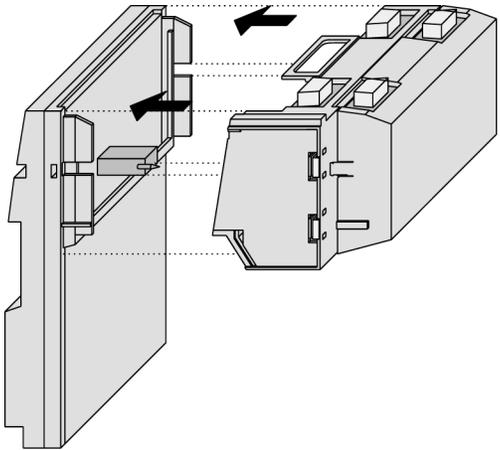
---

*Continued on next page*

## Mounting the Assembled Adapters on the I/O Base, Continued

### Procedure: Mounting the Assembled Adapters on an I/O Base

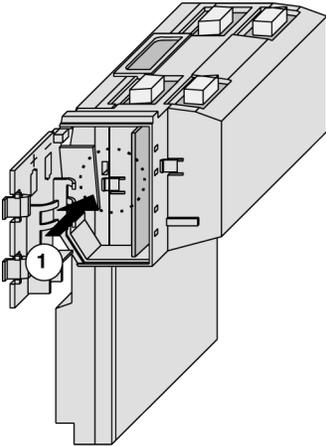
Follow the steps in the table below to mount the assembly on an I/O base.

Step	Action
1	Be sure that the I/O base is not under power when you assemble the module.
2	<p>Align the four plastic snap extensions (on the front and sides of the Option Adapter) with the slots on the I/O base.</p> <p>The 12-pin connectors will automatically line up when the units are in this position. The devices should be oriented such that their communication ports are facing out on the back side of the assembly.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Mounting the Assembled Adapters on the I/O Base, Continued

**Procedure:**  
**Mounting the**  
**Assembled**  
**Adapters on an**  
**I/O Base,**  
 Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>Push the assembled adapters onto the base, gently pressing the locking tabs inward.</p> <p>Snap #1 shown in the illustration below will not align properly with the mating slot in the I/O base unless the Option Adapter is placed straight onto the base. Do not attach just one latch and rotate the Option Adapter onto the I/O base.</p>  <p><b>Result:</b> The locking tabs on each side of the Option Adapter slide inside the I/O base and out through the locking slot. The 12-pin connectors on the two units are mated to each other in the process.</p>
4	<p>Apply slight pressure to the top of the stirrup on the back of the Option Adapter so that it snaps into place on the bottom of the I/O base.</p>

## Disassembling a Module with an Option Adapter

---

### Overview

The three-tiered assembly is designed to fit together tightly so it can withstand shock and vibration in an operating environment. This section contains two procedures:

- Removing the assembled adapters from the I/O base
  - Removing the Option Adapter from the Processor
- 

### Tools Required

Flat-head screwdriver.

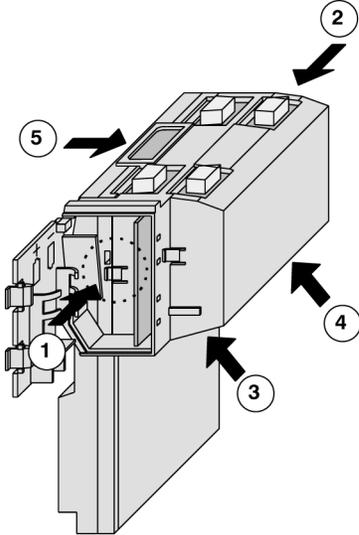
---

*Continued on next page*

## Disassembling a Module with an Option Adapter, Continued

**Procedure:**  
**Removing the Adapter Assembly from the I/O Base**

Follow the steps in the table below to remove the assembled Option Adapter and M1 Processor Adapter from the I/O base.

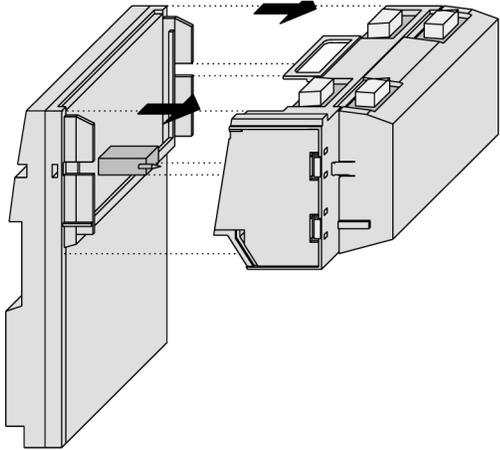
Step	Action
1	Make sure that the power is off by removing the terminal connectors from the I/O base.
2	Remove the assembled unit from its wall or DIN rail mounting surface.
	<p><b>CAUTION</b>  <b>EXPOSED CIRCUITRY IN BATTERY COMPARTMENT</b></p> <p>Use care when you insert a screwdriver in the battery compartment so that you do not scratch any exposed elements.</p> <p><b>Failure to observe this precaution can result in equipment damage.</b></p>
3	<p>Open the battery door and use a flat-head screwdriver to release snaps 1 and 2 as shown in the illustration below.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Disassembling a Module with an Option Adapter, Continued

**Procedure:**  
**Removing the**  
**Adapter**  
**Assembly from**  
**the I/O Base,**  
Continued

Step	Action
4	Once snaps 1 and 2 have been disengaged, use the screwdriver to release snaps 3 and 4 on the front of the assembly.
5	Gently lift the stirrup on the back of the Option Adapter with your fingers until it disengages from the bottom of the I/O base. Then lift the Option Adapter and M1 assembly from the I/O base.



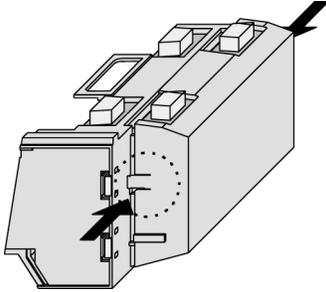
*Continued on next page*

## Disassembling a Module with an Option Adapter, Continued

---

**Procedure:**  
**Disassembling**  
**an Option**  
**Adapter and M1**  
**Processor**

Follow the steps in the table below to remove the Option Adapter from the M1 processor.

Step	Action
1	Use a screwdriver to push the clips on both sides of the adapter inward. 
2	Lift off the adapter.

## Section 3.3

# Installing Batteries in an Option Adapter

### Installation Guidelines

#### Why Install Batteries?

If you are using a Momentum Option Adapter in your CPU assembly, you have a battery-backup capability. The batteries will maintain user logic, state RAM values and the time-of-day clock in the event that the CPU loses power.

#### What Kind of Batteries?

Two AAA alkaline batteries can be installed in the compartment on the side of the Option Adapter. A set of batteries is supplied with the module (not installed).



#### CAUTION

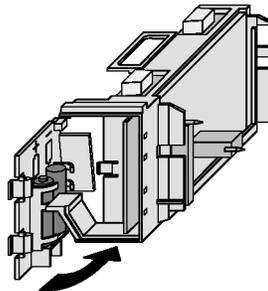
#### ELECTRONIC CIRCUITRY EXPOSED

When the battery door is open, electronic circuitry is exposed. Follow proper ESD measures while handling the equipment during battery maintenance.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.**

#### Installing Batteries

When installing the batteries, observe correct polarity, as indicated on the compartment door.



*Continued on next page*

## Installation Guidelines, Continued

---

### Leave Power On When Changing Batteries

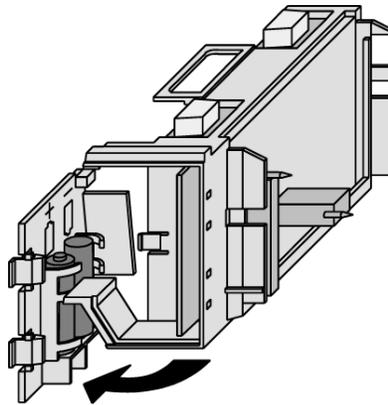
Once your CPU has been commissioned and is running, maintain power to the module whenever you change the batteries.

Unless you save to flash, if you change the batteries while the power is OFF, you will have to reload your user logic program from the original files).

---

### Removing and Replacing Batteries

Battery maintenance should be performed only by qualified personnel according to the following illustration.



### Monitor the Battery

Because a Momentum CPU assembly is designed to be installed in a cabinet where it cannot be seen at all times, no LED was created to monitor health.

We recommend that you reserve a battery coil in your programming panel software configuration and use it to monitor the health of your battery and report the need for replacement prior to battery failure (refer to *Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil* on page 200 for Modsoft or *Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil* on page 305 for Concept).

---

## Section 3.4

# Labeling the CPU

### Guidelines for Labeling the CPU

---

#### Overview

A fill-in label is shipped with each I/O base. This label should be placed on the M1 Processor Adapter that you mount on that base.

This section describes the label and provides an illustrated example.

---

#### Fill-In Label

A completed label provides information about the assembled module and its I/O field devices that can be used by service and maintenance personnel.

The model number of the I/O base is marked on the fill-in label directly above the color code. The cutout area above the I/O model number allows the model number of the adapter to show through.



**Note:** An Option Adapter may also be used in the assembled module. You will find its model number printed in the upper left corner of Option Adapter housing.

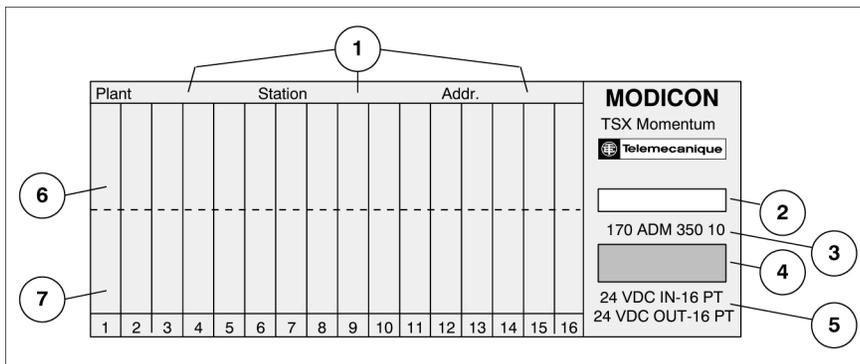
---

*Continued on next page*

## Guidelines for Labeling the CPU, Continued

### Example of a Fill-In Label

A fill-in label is illustrated in the illustration below. The numbered pointers in the illustration refer to the descriptions in the table that follows.



No.	Description
1	Fields for plant name, ston name and network address
2	Cutout—the model number of the adapter shows through
3	Model Number of the I/O base
4	Color code of the I/O base
5	Short description of the I/O base
6	Field for the symbol name of inputs
7	Field for the symbol name of outputs

---

# Communication Ports



---

## At a Glance

**Purpose** This part describes the communication ports available with TSX Momentum Processor Adapters and Option Adapters.

---

**In This Part** This part contains the following chapters:

For Information On...	See Chapter...	On Page...
Using the Modbus Ports	4	101
Using the Ethernet Port	5	131
Using the I/OBus Port	6	147
Using the Modbus Plus Ports	7	157

---



---

# Using the Modbus Ports

# 4

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

This chapter describes Modbus Port 1 and Modbus Port 2, including communication parameters, cabling guidelines for Modbus RS485 networks, cable accessories and pinouts.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

For This Topic...	See Section...	On Page...
Modbus Port 1	1	102
Modbus Port 2	2	109

---

## Section 4.1

# Modbus Port 1

### Overview

---

#### Purpose

Modbus Port 1 is standard on all TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapters, except the 171 CCC 960 20 and 171 CCC 980 20 ethernet adapters. This section describes the port and recommended cable accessories, and provides pinouts.

---

#### In This Section

This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Modbus Port 1	103
Cable Accessories for Modbus Port 1	106
Pinouts for Modbus Port 1	107

---

## Modbus Port 1

---

### Introduction

Modbus Port 1 is an RS232 asynchronous serial port that permits a host computer to communicate to the CPU for:

- Programming
- Data transfer
- Upload/download
- Other host operations

This section describes the port.

---

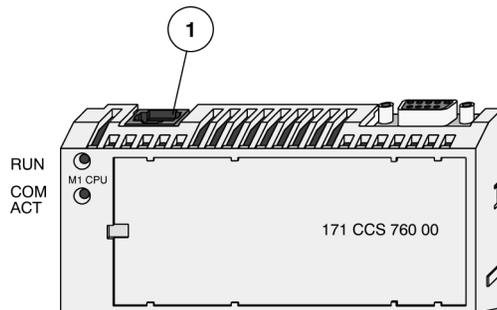
### Connector Type

The Modbus Port 1 connector is a female RJ45 phone jack.

---

### Illustration

The following illustration shows the position of Modbus Port 1 on a Processor Adapter:



Label	Description
1	Modbus Port 1

*Continued on next page*

---

## Modbus Port 1, Continued

---

**Port Parameters** Modbus Port 1 supports the following communication parameters.

<b>Baud</b>	50	1800
	75	2000
	110	2400
	134	3600
	150	4800
	300	7200
	600	9600
	1200	19,200
<b>Parity</b>	EVEN	
	ODD	
	NONE	
<b>Mode/Data Bits</b>	7-bit ASCII	
	8-bit RTU	
<b>Stop Bit</b>	1	
<b>Modbus Address</b>	In the range 1 ... 247	

---

*Continued on next page*

## Modbus Port 1, Continued

---

### Default Parameters

The factory-set default communication parameters for Modbus Port 1 are:

- 9600 baud
- EVEN parity
- 8-bit RTU mode
- 1 stop bit
- Modbus address

A Processor Adapter cannot support more than one stop bit. If you change this default setting in the configuration software, the Processor Adapter will ignore the change.

All other port parameters can be successfully modified in the configuration software.

---

### Auto-Logout Feature

If a programming panel is logged into the CPU via the RS232 serial port and its cable gets disconnected, the CPU automatically logs out the port. This auto-logout feature is designed to prevent a lock-up situation that could prevent other host stations from logging in on other ports.

---

## Cable Accessories for Modbus Port 1

---

**Overview** This section describes the cable and D-shell adapters needed to connect Modbus Port 1 to a programming station. It also provides pinouts for the adapters.

---

**Cables** The cable connecting a programming station to the CPU (via Modbus Port 1) can be up to 9.5m long. Three premade cable assemblies are available from Schneider Electric:

Length	Part Number
1 m (3 ft)	110 XCA 282 01
3 m (10 ft)	110 XCA 282 02
6 m (20 ft)	110 XCA 282 03

All three assemblies are standard eight-position, foil-shielded, flat telephone cables with male RJ45 connectors on each end. One RJ45 connector plugs into Modbus Port 1 on the CPU, and the other plugs into a female D-shell adapter that fits onto the programming station.

---

**D-Shell Adapters** Two D-shell adapters are available from Schneider Automation for CPU-to-computer connections:

- A 110 XCA 203 00 9-pin adapter for 9 pin serial ports
- A 110 XCA 204 00 25-pin adapter for 25 pin serial ports

These adapters have an RJ45 jack on one end that allows them to clip directly onto a cable assembly.

---

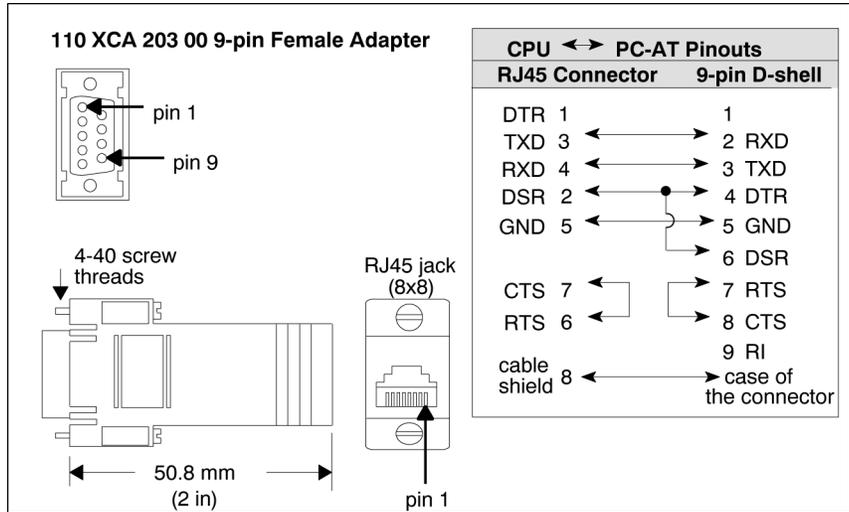
## Pinouts for Modbus Port 1

### Overview

This section provides pinouts for the D-shell adapters for Modbus Port 1.

### 110 XCA 203 00 Pinout

The pinout for this adapter is shown in the illustration below:

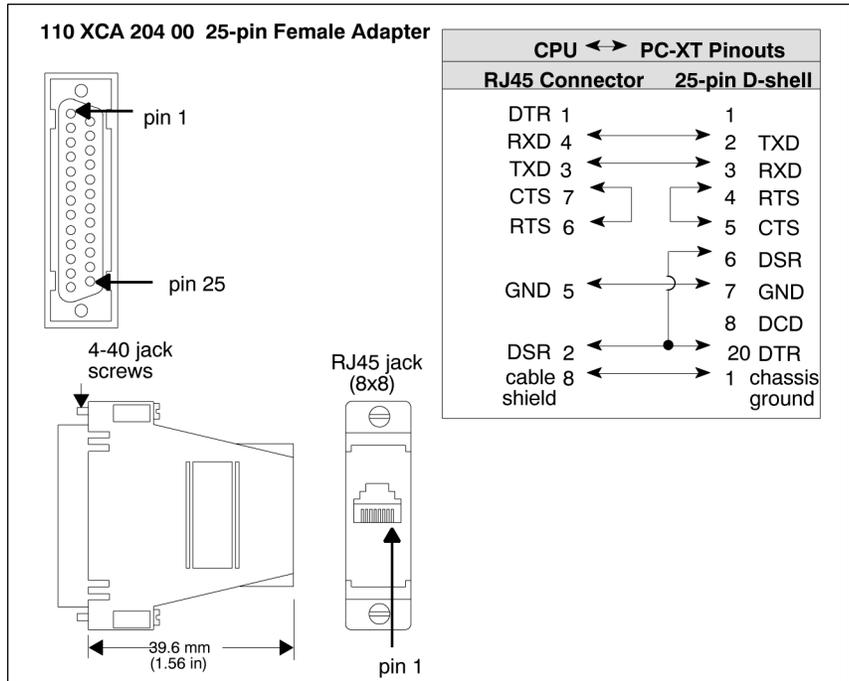


*Continued on next page*

## Pinouts for Modbus Port 1, Continued

### 110 XCA 204 00 Pinout

The pinout for this adapter is shown in the illustration below:



---

## Section 4.2

# Modbus Port 2

### Overview

---

#### Purpose

Four Momentum components offer this port:

- 171 CCS 780 00 Processor Adapter
- 171 CCC 780 10 Processor Adapter
- 171 CCC 980 20 Processor Adapter
- 172 JNN 210 32 Serial Option Adapter

This section describes the port and provides guidelines for Modbus RS485 networks.

---

#### In This Section

This section contains the following topics:

Topics	Page
Modbus Port 2	110
Four-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks	113
Two-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks	116
Cable for Modbus RS485 Networks	119
Connectors for Modbus RS485 Networks	122
Terminating Devices for Modbus RS485 Networks	124
Pinouts for Modbus RS485 Networks	125

---

## Modbus Port 2

---

### Two Types of Port

Modbus Port 2 is available in two types:

Component	Type of Port	Type of Connector
171 CCS 780 00, and 171 CCC 780 10 and 171 CCC 980 20 Processor Adapters	Built-in, dedicated RS485 port	9-pin D-shell connector
172 JNN 210 32 Serial Option Adapter	User may configure port as RS232 or RS485*	RJ45 phone jack connector
*If the Option Adapter is combined with the 171 CCS 780 00, or 171 CCC 780 10 or 171 CCC 980 20 Processor Adapter, the Modbus port on the Option Adapter will be disabled.		

### Features of an RS485 Port

Modbus Port 2 can be configured as an RS485 port. RS485 supports two-wire or four-wire cabling. A multimaster/slave system must use two-wire cabling. A single master/slave system may use two- or four-wire cabling.

The RS485 protocol handles messaging over long distances with higher level of noise immunity than RS232 without the need for modems.

### Limit of Two Modbus Ports

The Momentum M1 Processor Adapters can support a maximum of two Modbus ports.

If a 172JNN 210 32 Serial Option Adapter is used in conjunction with a 171 CCS 780 00 or 171 CCC 780 10 Processor Adapter, the RS485 port on the Processor Adapter becomes Modbus Port 2. The port on the Option Adapter becomes electrically neutral and does not support any communication activities. (The TOD clock and battery backup system on the Option Adapter continue to work.)

---

*Continued on next page*

---

## Modbus Port 2, Continued

---

**Port Parameters** Modbus Port 2 offers the following communication parameters:

<b>Baud</b>	50	1800
	75	2000
	110	2400
	134	3600
	150	4800
	300	7200
	600	9600
	1200	19,200
<b>Parity</b>	EVEN	
	ODD	
	NONE	
<b>Mode/Data Bits</b>	8-bit RTU	
	7-bit ASCII	
<b>Stop Bit</b>	1	
<b>Modbus Address</b>	In the range 1 ... 247	
<b>Comm Protocol</b>	RS232	
	RS485	

---

*Continued on next page*

## Modbus Port 2, Continued

---

### Default Parameters

The factory-set default communication parameters for Modbus Port 2 are:

- 9600 baud
- EVEN parity
- 8-bit RTU mode
- 1 stop bit
- Modbus network address 1
- RS232 protocol



**Note:** Processor Adapters support only one stop bit. If you change this default setting in the configuration software, the Processor Adapter will ignore the change.



**Note:** The default protocol must be changed from RS232 to RS485 for the 171 CCS 780 00, 171 CCC 780 10 Processor Adapters or the port will not function. The 171 CCC 980 20 changes automatically.

### Auto-Logout Feature Only with RS232

If the Serial Option Adapter is used and the RS232 port is chosen, auto-logout is supported. If a programming panel is logged into the CPU via the serial port and its cable gets disconnected, the Processor Adapter automatically logs out the port. This auto-logout feature is designed to prevent a lock-up situation that could prevent other host stations from logging in on other ports.

Auto-logout is not available for any RS485 port, including the RS485 option on the Serial Option Adapter. The user must log out of the processor using the programming software.

---

---

## Four-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks

---

**Introduction** Four-wire cabling schemes may be used for single master/slave communications. Only one master is allowed. The master may be located anywhere in the network.

---

**Length** The maximum length of cable from one end of network to other is 2000 ft (609 m).

---

**Number of Devices** The maximum number of devices in a network is 64 if all are TSX Momentum devices. Otherwise, the maximum is 32.

---

**Termination** You must terminate both ends of the cable run with special terminating resistors.

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Resistor Plugs (pack of 2). Color code - red	170 XTS 021 00

---

**Master Cable** The master of this master/slave cabling scheme must be connected on at least one side to a master cable, a special cable that crosses the transmit and receive lines.

The other side may be connected to a master cable, or, if the master is at one end of the cable run, a terminating resistor.

Description	Part Number
Modbus RS485 (RJ45/RJ45) Master Communication Cable	170 MCI 041 10
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Resistor Plugs (pack of 2). Color code - blue	170 XTS 021 00

---

*Continued on next page*

## Four-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

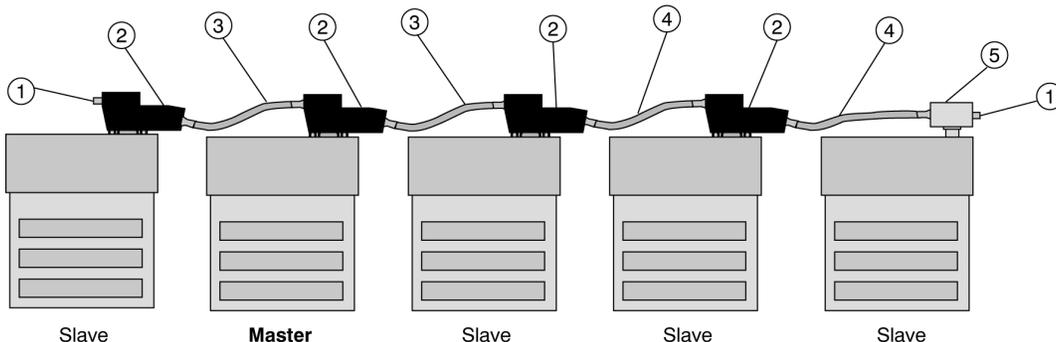
### Slave Cabling

The slaves use a pin-for-pin cable, such as the Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable or any Cat. 5 4-Twisted Pair Ethernet cable AWG#24.

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable. Color code - black	170 MCI 020 10

### Single Master/ Slave Option 1

The following illustration shows components used in a four-wire single master/slave cabling scheme. In this view, a master cable (#3) is used on both sides of the master. Each Momentum module must include a Processor Adapter or Option Adapter with a Modbus RS485 port.



**Note:** Each cable has different colored boots. The color of the boots signifies the cable's function.

Label	Description	Part Number
1	Terminating resistor plug	170 XTS 021 00
2	Modbus RS485 connector "T" (DB9 base)	170 XTS 040 00
3	Modbus RS485 Master Communication Cable	170 MCI 041 10
4	Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 10
5	Modbus RS485 connector "T" (RJ45 base)	170 XTS 041 00

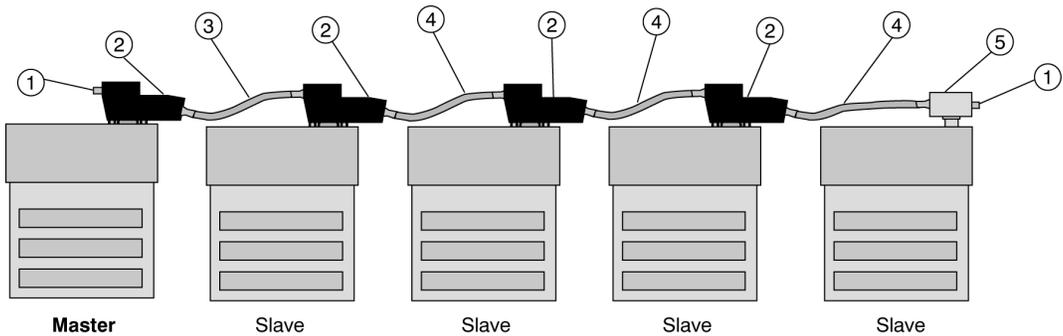
*Continued on next page*

## Four-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

### Single Master/ Slave Option 2

The following illustration shows components used in a four-wire single master/slave cabling scheme. In this view, the master is at one end of the network and is connected by a single master cable (#3). Terminating resistors (#1) are used at both ends of the network.

Each Momentum module must include a Processor Adapter or Option Adapter with a Modbus RS485 port.



Label	Description	Part Number
1	Terminating resistor plug	170 XTS 021 00
2	Modbus RS485 connector "T" (DB9 base)	170 XTS 040 00
3	Modbus RS485 Master Communication Cable	170 MCI 041 10
4	Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 10
5	Modbus RS485 connector "T" (RJ45 base)	170 XTS 041 00

## Two-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks

---

### Introduction

Two-wire cabling schemes may be used for single master/slave or multimaster/slave communications. Masters may be located anywhere in the network.



### CAUTION

#### POTENTIAL FOR MULTIMASTER CONFLICTS

Configure a multimaster network carefully to avoid masters issuing simultaneous or conflicting commands to the same slave module.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.**

---

### Length

The maximum length of cable from one end of network to other is 2000 ft (609 m).

---

### Number of Devices

The maximum number of devices in a network is 64 if all are TSX Momentum devices. Otherwise, the maximum is 32.

---

### Termination

One end of the cable run must be terminated with a terminating resistor (color code is red).

The other end of the cable must be terminated with a terminating shunt, which connects the transmit pair to the receiver pair (color code is blue).

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Resistor Plugs (pack of 2)	170 XTS 021 00
Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Shunt Plugs	170 XTS 042 00

---

*Continued on next page*

## Two-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

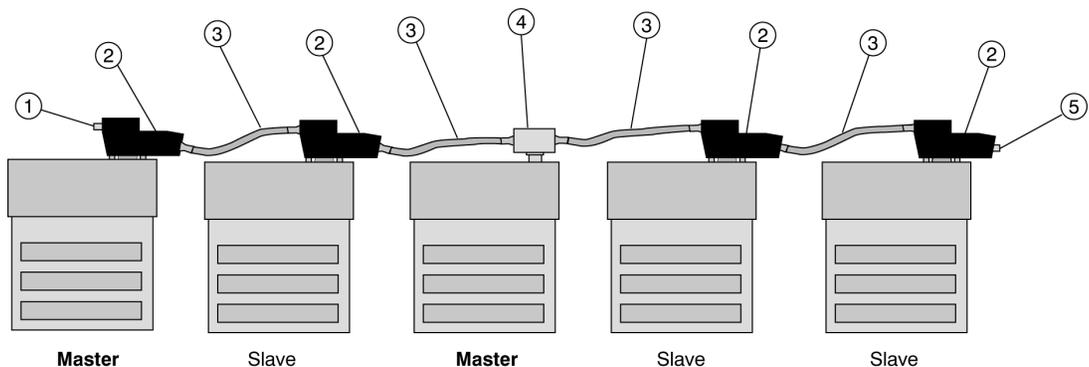
### Cable

All devices are connected with the same pin-for-pin cable, such as the Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable or any Cat. 5 4-Twisted Pair Ethernet cable AWG#24. A master/slave system using 2-wire cabling does not require the special master communication cable.

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable. Color code - black	170 MCI 020 10

### Multimaster/ Slave Cabling

The following illustration shows components used in a multimaster/slave network. Each Momentum module must include a Processor Adapter or Option Adapter with a Modbus RS485 port.



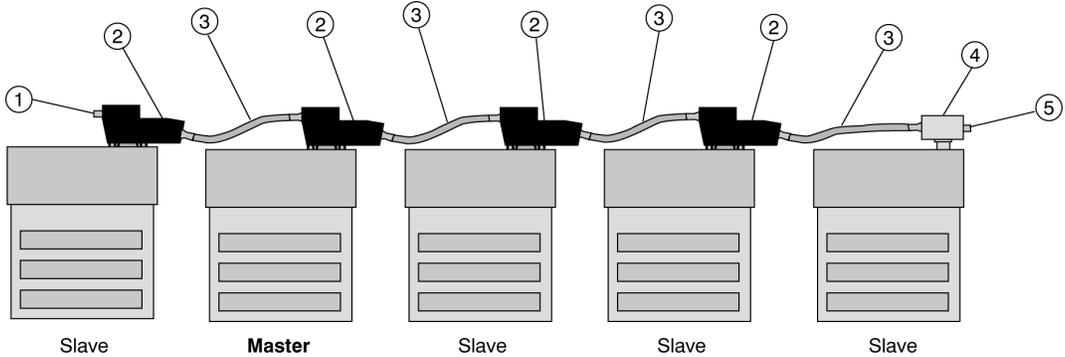
Label	Description	Part Number
1	Terminating resistor plug. Color code - red	170 XTS 021 00
2	Modbus RS485 connector "T" (DB9 base)	170 XTS 040 00
3	Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable. Color code - black	170 MCI 020 10
4	Modbus RS485 connector "T" (RJ45 base)	170 XTS 041 00
5	Terminating shunt plug. Color code - blue	170 XTS 042 00

*Continued on next page*

## Two-Wire Cabling Schemes for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

### Single Master/ Slave Cabling

The following illustration shows components used for single master/slave communications in a two-wire cabling scheme. Each Momentum module must include a Processor Adapter or Option Adapter with a Modbus RS485 port.



Label	Description	Part Number
1	Terminating resistor plug. Color code - red	170 XTS 021 00
2	Modbus RS485 connector "T" (DB9 base)	170 XTS 040 00
3	Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable. Color code - black	170 MCI 020 10
4	Modbus RS485 connector "T" (RJ45 base)	170 XTS 041 00
5	Terminating shunt plug. Color code - blue	170 XTS 042 00

---

## Cable for Modbus RS485 Networks

---

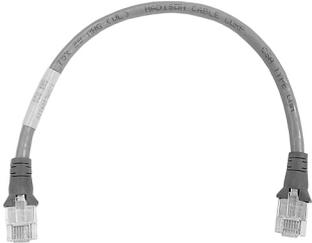
### Overview

This section describes the cables which should be used in constructing an RS485 network for TSX Momentum components.

---

### Master Communication Cable

This cable is required for master/slave communications in a four-wire cabling scheme. This cable is 10" long and has a *blue boot*.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus RS485 (RJ45/RJ45) Master Communication Cable	170 MCI 041 10	

*Continued on next page*

## Cable for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

### Interconnect Cables

Cable for connecting two Modbus RS485 devices, such as TSX Momentum modules, is available from Schneider Automation in four lengths. These cables have a *black boot*.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable (10") Can be used for Ethernet	170 MCI 020 10	
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 3 ft. Interconnect Cable Can be used for Ethernet	170 MCI 020 36	
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 10 ft. Interconnect Cable Cannot be used for Ethernet	170 MCI 021 80	
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 30 ft. Interconnect Cable Cannot be used for Ethernet	170 MCI 020 80	

*Continued on next page*

---

## Cable for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

---

### Other Premade Cable

Interconnect and Ethernet cable in various lengths and boot colors may be obtained from other vendors, including Amp:

Description	Amp Part Number
2 ft	621 894-2
5 ft	621 894-4
7 ft	621 894-5
10 ft	621 894-6
14 ft	621 894-7

---

### Custom Cable

For custom cabling, use Cat. 5 4-Twisted Pair Ethernet Cable AWG#26. It may be shielded or unshielded. Shielded cable is recommended for long runs and for noisy environments. You may use stranded or unstranded cable. Keep in mind that stranded cable is more flexible.

---

### Custom Cable Vendors

Vendors include:

Vendor	Part # for Shielded Cable	Part # for Unshielded Cable
Belden	1633A	1583A non plenum 1585A plenum
Berk/Tek	530131	540022
Alcatel Cable Net	--	Hipernet Cat. 5 - UTP (LSZH-rated cable)

---

### Crimping Tool

Schneider Automation provides a crimping tool (490 NAB 000 10) and an RJ45 die set (170 XTS 023 00) to attach the 170 XTS 022 00 connector to the cable.

---

## Connectors for Modbus RS485 Networks

---

### Overview

This section describes the connectors which should be used in constructing an RS485 network for TSX Momentum components.

---

### RJ45 Connector “T”

This connector is used with the RS485 port on the 172 JNN 210 32 Option Adapter.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus RS485 Connector “T” (RJ45 base)	170 XTS 041 00	

---

### DB9 Connector “T”

This connector is used with the RS485 port on the Processor Adapters.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus RS485 Connector “T” (DB9 base)	170 XTS 040 00	

---

*Continued on next page*

---

## Connectors for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

---

### Connectors for Custom Cabling

This RJ45 connector should be used when constructing custom cable for an RS485 network.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
RJ45 Connector (pack of 25)	170 XTS 022 00	

---

---

## Terminating Devices for Modbus RS485 Networks

---

### Overview

This section describes terminating devices which should be used in constructing Modbus RS485 networks for TSX Momentum devices.

---

### Terminating Resistor Plugs

Terminating resistor plugs are used with the RS485 connector (RJ45 base) at the last device on either end of a four-wire cable network or at one end of a two-wire cable network.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Resistor Plugs (pack of 2). Color code - red	170 XTS 021 00	

---

### Shunt Plugs

Shunt plugs are used with the RS485 connector (RJ45 base) at one end of a two-wire cable network. The plug is used at the last device on the network.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Shunt Plugs. Color code - blue	170 XTS 042 00	

---

---

## Pinouts for Modbus RS485 Networks

---

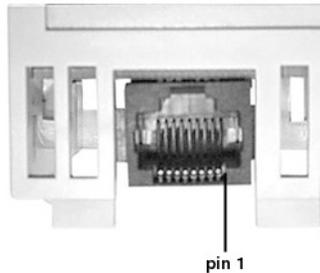
### Overview

This section contains pinouts for wiring an RS485 network for TSX Momentum components.

---

### RJ45 Pinout

The illustration below shows the pinouts for wiring an RJ45 connector for RS485:



Pin	Function
1	RXD -
2	RXD +
3	TXD +
4	Reserved
5	Signal common
6	TXD -
7	Reserved
8	Shield

---

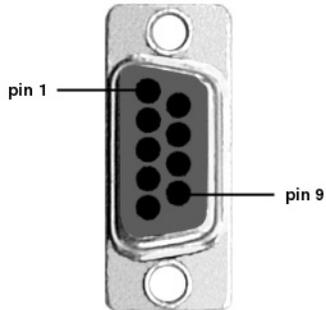
*Continued on next page*

## Pinouts for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

---

### 9-Pin D-Shell Pinout

The illustration below shows the pinouts for wiring a male 9-pin D-shell connector for RS485. The metal shell is connected to chassis ground.



Pin	Function
1	TXD +
2	RXD +
3	Signal common
4	Reserved
5	Reserved
6	TXD -
7	RXD -
8	Reserved
9	Reserved

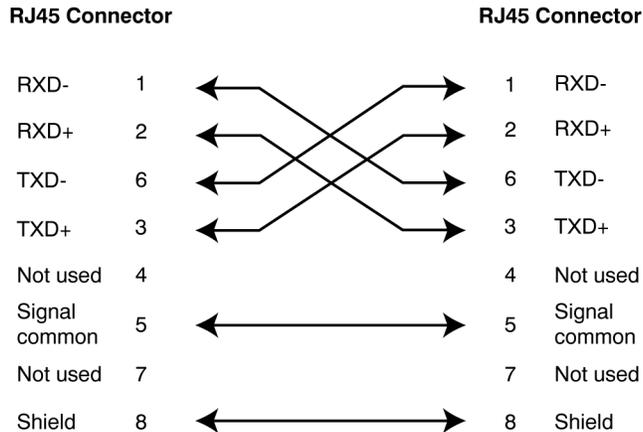
---

*Continued on next page*

## Pinouts for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

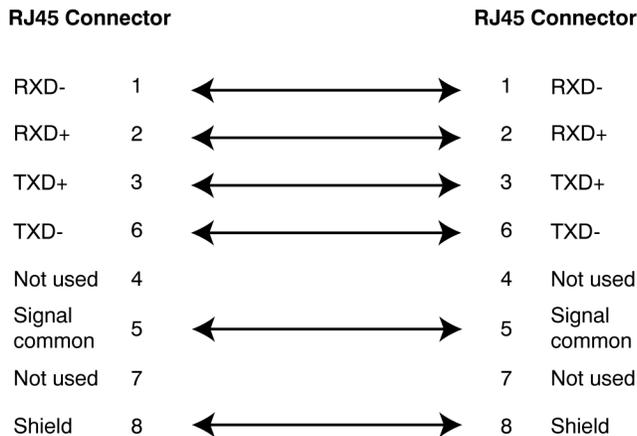
### Master Communication Cable

The illustration below shows the pinout for the 170 MCI 041 10 Modbus RS485 (RJ45/RJ45) Master Communication Cable:



### Interconnect Cables

The illustration below shows the pinout for the 170 MCI 02x xx Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Interconnect Cables (10 in, 3 ft, 10 ft and 30 ft):

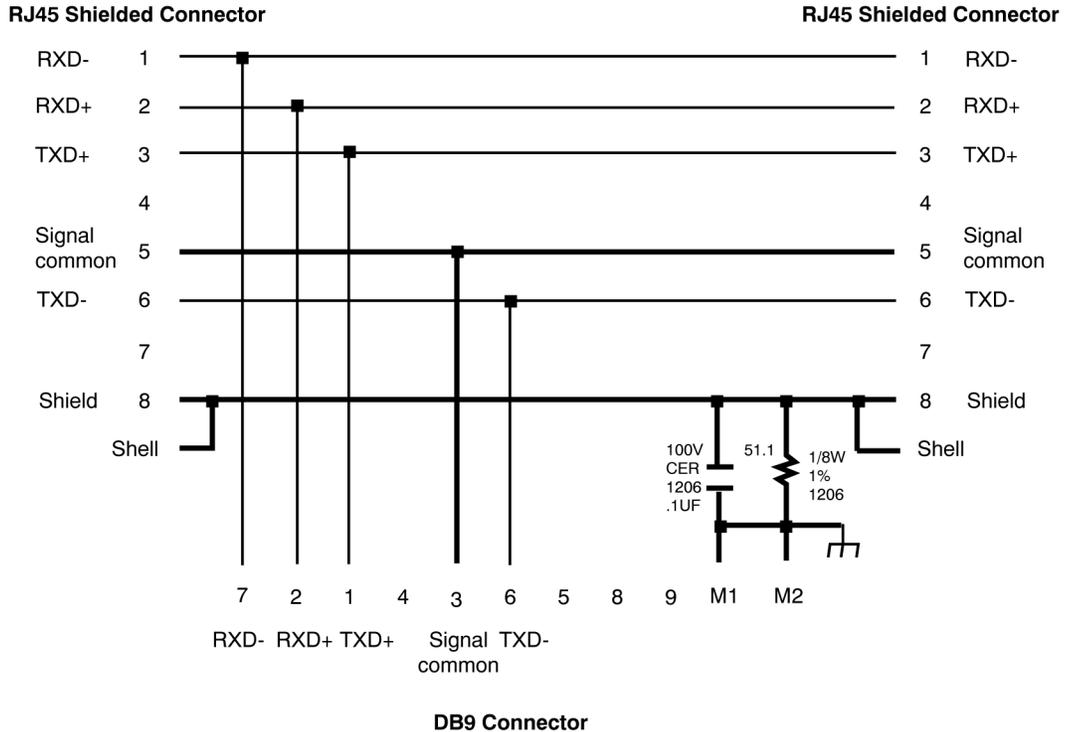


*Continued on next page*

## Pinouts for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

### Modbus RS485 Connector "T" (DB9 Base)

The illustration below shows the pinout for the Modbus RS485 Connector "T" (DB9 base):

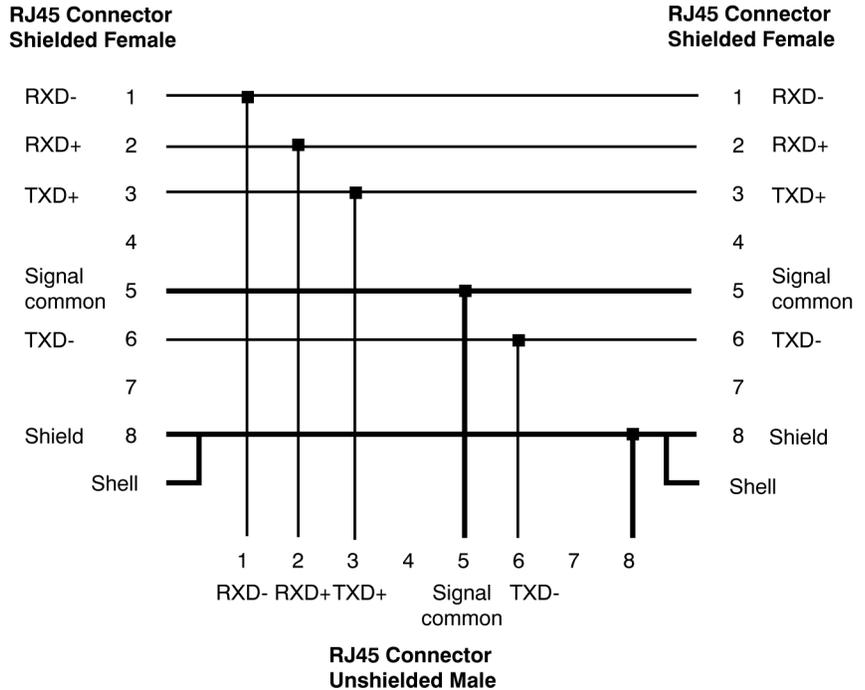


*Continued on next page*

## Pinouts for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

### Modbus RS485 Connector "T" (RJ45 Base)

The illustration below shows the pinout for the Modbus RS485 Connector "T" (RJ45 base):



*Continued on next page*

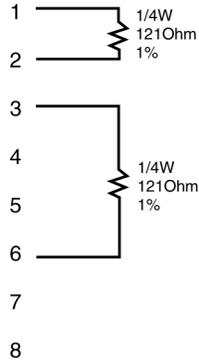
## Pinouts for Modbus RS485 Networks, Continued

---

### Terminating Resistor Plugs

The illustration below shows the pinout for the Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Resistor Plugs:

#### RJ45 Connector



### Terminating Shunt Plugs

The illustration below shows the pinout for the Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Shunt Plugs:

#### RJ45 Connector



---

# Using the Ethernet Port

# 5

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

Ethernet ports are available with:

- 171 CCC 960 20 Processor Adapter
- 171 CCC 980 20 Processor Adapter

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Ethernet Port	132
Network Design Considerations	133
Security	135
Cabling Schemes	136
Pinouts	137
Assigning Ethernet Address Parameters	138
Using BOOTP Lite to Assign Address Parameters	141
Reading Ethernet Network Statistics	142

## Ethernet Port

---

### Introduction

The Ethernet port allows a Processor Adapter to connect to an Ethernet network for:

- high-speed I/O servicing
- high-speed data transfer
- programming
- worldwide connectivity via the Internet
- interfaces with a wide array of standard Modbus over TCP/IP Ethernet-aware devices



#### **CAUTION**

##### **Communication Errors May Result**

After taking an Ethernet Processor out of service, it is recommended that you clear the program and IP address to prevent future conflicts.

Before installing a replacement Ethernet Processor on your network, verify that it contains the correct IP address and program for your application.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.**

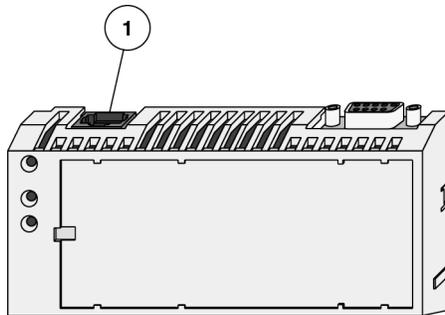
### Connector Type

The Ethernet connector is a female RJ45 style phone jack.

---

### Illustration

The following illustration shows the position of the Ethernet port on a Processor Adapter:



---

## Network Design Considerations

---

### Introduction

In a distributed control environment, Ethernet can be used as:

- an I/O network
- a supervisory network
- a network that combines I/O and supervisory functions

This section discusses how to design your network to make communication between related devices as effective and deterministic as possible.



**Note:** Preserve your ARP cache information.

When installed on a new network, the M1 Ethernet Processor will obtain the MAC and IP addresses of other devices on the network. This process may require several minutes.

When the module is successfully communicating with these devices, if a ring adapter with battery back up is not present, it is recommended that you stop the processor and save the user program to Flash. This will save the processor's ARP cache and enable it to "remember" this information if power is lost or removed. If you do not save to flash, the processor must repeat acquiring the ARP cache information from the network.

This procedure should also be followed whenever:

- A new or substitute device is installed on the network;
- The IP address of a network device has been changed.



---

### CAUTION

#### CONTROL NETWORKS MUST BE ISOLATED FROM MIS DATA NETWORKS

To maintain a deterministic Ethernet network, you must isolate Momentum Processor Adapters and related devices from MIS data networks. Traffic from MIS data networks can interrupt communication between control devices, causing your control application to behave unpredictably.

Additionally, the high message rates that may be generated between M1 Processors and I/O Adapters may bog down an MIS network, causing loss of productivity.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.**

---

*Continued on next page*

## Network Design Considerations, Continued

---

### **I/O Networks**

In an Ethernet I/O network architecture, an M1 Processor Adapter is used to control Momentum I/O points equipped with an Ethernet Communication Adapter or other Modbus over TCP/IP Ethernet-aware devices. Communication between these devices should be isolated not only from MIS data traffic, but also from unrelated communication between other control devices.

You may isolate communication by creating a separate network or by using switches.

---

### **Supervisory Networks**

In a supervisory architecture, several intelligent processing devices share system data with each other. Many kinds of devices may be part of the network. You should be aware of each device's requirement for access to the network and of the impact each device will have on the timing of your network communication.

---

### **Combined Supervisory and I/O Handling**

If your system requires both supervisory and I/O handling architectures, one solution is to use the I/OBus capabilities of the 171 CCC 960 20 Processor Adapter for the I/O network and the Ethernet capabilities for the supervisory network.

If you intend to use Ethernet to handle both functions, use switches to isolate the network traffic and supply additional buffering of network packets.

---

### **Concurrent Communication**

A maximum of 96 devices may be communicating with the Processor Adapter via the Ethernet at any one time. This 96-device limit consists of:

- up to 2 programming panels (one must be in monitor mode)
  - up to 14 general purpose Modbus server paths
  - up to 16 MSTR elements which support Modbus read, write or read/write commands
  - up to 64 cyclic configured data slave paths
- 

*Continued on next page*

## Security

---

### Overview

To restrict access to your Ethernet controller and I/O network, you may want to consider a firewall. A firewall is a gateway which controls access to your network.

---

### Types of Firewalls

There are two types of firewalls:

- Network-level firewalls
  - Application-level firewalls
- 

### Network-Level Firewalls

Network-level firewalls are frequently installed between the Internet and a single point of entry to an internal, protected network.

---

### Application-Level Firewalls

An application-level firewall acts on behalf of an application. It intercepts all traffic destined for that application and decides whether to forward that traffic to the application. Application-level firewalls reside on individual host computers.

---

## Cabling Schemes

### Introduction

In a standard Ethernet cabling scheme, each device connects via a cable to a port on a central Ethernet hub.

### Length

The maximum length of cable between devices depends on the type of hub used, as shown in the following table:

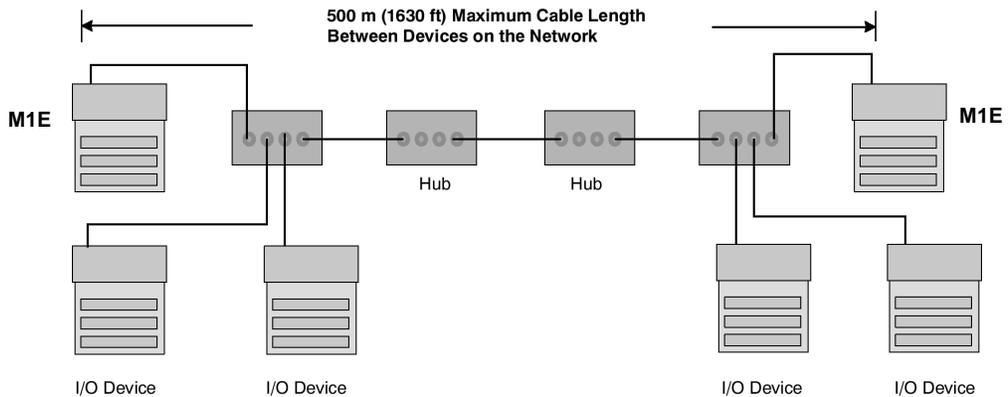
Type of Hub	Max. Cable from Device to Hub	Max. Hubs Between Any Two Nodes	Max. Cable Between Most Distant Nodes on Network
Traditional (Non-switching)	100 m	4	500 m
Switches	100 m	Unlimited	Unlimited



**Note:** 10/100 hubs/switches can be used. This will allow 100 Base T networks to use the M1E.

### Cabling with Traditional Hubs

The following illustration shows the maximum number of hubs and the maximum cable length between devices when using traditional (non-switching) hubs:



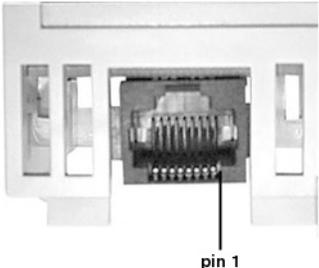
# Pinouts

## Overview

This section contains pinouts for wiring an Ethernet network for TSX Momentum components.

## RJ45 Pinout

The illustration below shows the pinouts for wiring an RJ45 connector for Ethernet:



Pin	Function
1	TXD +
2	TXD -
3	RXD +
4	
5	
6	RXD -
7	
8	



**Note:** These are industry standard pinouts. Prefabricated patch cables can be used.

## Assigning Ethernet Address Parameters

---

### Overview

As shipped from the factory, the M1 Ethernet Processor does not contain an IP address. This is also true if you have not programmed the unit with an Ethernet configuration extension. In this condition, when the module starts up, it will attempt to obtain an IP address from the network's BOOTP server.

You can use Concept to assign an IP address, default gateway and sub network mask. See *Setting Ethernet Address Parameters* on page 325.

You can also assign IP address parameters using the BOOTP Lite software utility. See *Using BOOTP Lite to Assign Address Parameters* on page 141.



### CAUTION

#### DUPLICATE ADDRESS HAZARD

Be sure that your Processor Adapter will receive a unique IP address. Having two or more devices with the same IP address can cause unpredictable operation of your network.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.**

---

### Using a BOOTP Server

A BOOTP server is a program which manages the IP addresses assigned to devices on the network. Your system administrator can confirm whether a BOOTP server exists on your network and can help you use the server to maintain the adapter's IP address.

---

### How an unconfigured ("as shipped") module obtains an IP address

On startup, an unconfigured processor will attempt to obtain an IP address by issuing BOOTP requests. When a response from a BOOTP server is obtained, that IP address will be used.

---

*Continued on next page*

---

## Assigning Ethernet Address Parameters, Continued

---

### **Specifying Address Parameters**

Consult your system administrator to obtain a valid IP address and appropriate gateway and subnet mask, if required. Then follow the instructions in *Setting Ethernet Address Parameters* on page 325.

---

### **Assigning an IP address Via Concept's "Use IP Address" option.**

You can select the module's "Use IP Address" mode via Concept to assign an IP address (as well as default gateway and sub network mask) to the module.

In this mode, the module will listen for BOOTP messages at startup (but will not issue any BOOTP requests). If a BOOTP response is received the module will use the received IP address and the user program will be prevented from starting.

---

### **Assigning an IP address Via Concept's "Use BOOTP Server" option**

You can select the module's "Use BOOTP Server" mode via Concept to instruct the module to obtain its IP address from a network BOOTP server. In this mode, only an address obtained from a BOOTP server will be accepted by the module.

---

### **To Retain Settings**

After setting the module's address mode, you must save your program to Flash memory if you want this setting to be retained when power is removed from the module. This is not necessary if the module is attached to a ring adapter, which provides battery back up. See *Saving to Flash with Concept* on page 375.

---

### **If BOOTP Server Responds**

If the server responds with address parameters, the adapter will use those parameters as long as power remains applied to the adapter.

If the server doesn't respond, the adapter will retry its request three times.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Assigning Ethernet Address Parameters, Continued

---

If no BOOTP response is received and if address parameters have been stored previously in Flash memory, the adapter will use the parameters from Flash memory.

If no BOOTP response is received and if no parameters have been stored previously, the adapter will continue to try the BOOTP request every 30 seconds. During this time the RUN indicator on the Processor Adapter will display a pattern of five flashes.

---

### **If the Processor Adapter Is Re-initialized**

If the adapter has stored its address parameters and is re-initialized (for example, following loss of power), the adapter will again issue requests for parameters from a BOOTP server.

- If the server responds with address parameters, the adapter will use those parameters.
  - If the server does not respond, the adapter will revert to the address parameters previously stored in Flash memory.
- 

### **Processor Test**

In all cases, when the processor receives an IP address, it will test for duplicate addresses by sending broadcast ARP requests three times at 5 second intervals. If there are no replies to its requests, it will send gratuitous ARP three times at 2 second intervals to announce its presence on the network.

---

---

## Using BOOTP Lite to Assign Address Parameters

---

**CAUTION****INCORRECT MAC ADDRESS HAZARD**

Be sure to verify the MAC address of the target device before invoking BOOTP Lite. If you do not enter the correct parameters of the target controller, it will run in its old configuration. An incorrect MAC address may also result in an unwanted change to another device and cause unexpected results.

Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.

### Specifying Addresses/ Stopping the Processor

Instead of a BOOTP server, Schneider Electric's BOOTP Lite utility software can be used to provide the IP address, subnet mask and default gateway to the processor.

A response from BOOTP Lite will cause the processor to enter Stopped mode on completion of power up, if the processor has been set to "Specify IP Address" mode via Concept. This is useful when inappropriate outbound network traffic might result if the processor immediately transitioned into Run mode after power up.

Refer to the BOOTP Lite user documentation for instructions.



**Note:** BOOTP Lite and the user document are available for download at [www.modicon.com](http://www.modicon.com).

## Reading Ethernet Network Statistics

**Overview** Ethernet Network statistics are stored in the processor adapter and can be viewed by the user.

**Procedure** The M1 ethernet Processor Adapter's Ethernet Network Statistics can be viewed using the Network Options Ethernet Tester. This software utility is available with the *Modicon Quantum Ethernet TCP/IP Module User Guide* 840 USE 107 00, Version 2.0.

**Table of Statistics** Network statistics occupy word 4 through word 35 in the Modbus Status Table, as follows:

**Table 1: TCP/IP Ethernet Statistics Table**

Word	Data
00 ... 02	MAC Address
03	Board Status
04, 05	Rx Interrupt
06, 07	Tx Interrupt
08, 09	NA
10, 11	Total Collisions
12, 13	Rx Missed Packet Errors
14, 15	NA
16, 17	Chip Restart Count Lo word – Collison Peak Detector
18, 19	Framing Errors (Giant Frame Error)
20, 21	Overflow Errors
22, 23	CRC Errors
24, 25	Receive Buffer Errors (Out of Server Paths)
26, 27	Transmit Buffer Errors
28, 29	Silo Underflow (TCP retries)
30, 31	Late Collision
32, 33	Lost Carrier
34, 35	16 Collision Tx Failure
36, 37	IP Address

*Continued on next page*

## Description

---

### Operational Statistics

**Words 4, 5  
Receive  
Interrupts**      Number of frames received by this station. Only broadcast frames pertinent to this station and individual address match frames are received and counted.

---

**Words 6, 7  
Transmit  
Interrupts**      Number of frames transmitted from this station. Includes all transmitted broadcast frames for ARP and BOOTP.

---

### Ethernet Network Functioning Errors

**Words 8, 9**      Not used.

---

**Words 10, 11  
Total Collisions**      This field contains the total number of transmit collisions.

---

**Words 12, 13 Rx  
Missed Packet  
Errors**      Receive frame was missed because no buffer space was available to store the frame. Indicates firmware unable to keep up with link. The only time this should increment is during the `save user logic to flash` command, when all interrupts are disabled for 10 seconds.

---

**Words 14, 15**      Not used.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Description, Continued

---

### Words 16, 17

**High Word:** Not used, always 0

**Low Word:** Peak Collision Detector

This field contains the number of consecutive collisions that occurred before the frame was successfully transmitted out onto the Ethernet. Most transmitted frames have zero collisions. Some have one collision on the first transmit attempt and succeed on the second attempt. Some have more than one collision followed by success. The largest number of consecutive collisions, since `clear statistics` command, is stored and displayed in this field.

---

## Receiver Errors

### Words 18, 19 Framing Errors

Counts the number of received frames addressed to this node that are greater than 320 bytes in length. Any such large frame has no relevance to the M1 Ethernet adapter and therefore is skipped.

This error should not occur.

---

### Overflow Errors

Increments whenever a received frame cannot be copied into the frame buffer, because the frame buffer is full. This situation should never occur under legal Ethernet traffic.

### Words 20, 21 CRC Errors

Increments when the received packet is received under any of the following error conditions:

- CRC error
- Extra data error
- Runt error

This counter can be made to increment by continuously disconnecting and reconnecting the M1 Ethernet cable during cyclic communication.

---

*Continued on next page*

---

## Description, Continued

---

**Words 24, 25  
Receive Buffer  
Errors**

Increments whenever a client attempts to connect to the M1 Ethernet, and fails, because there is no available server path. The M1 Ethernet supports 14 simultaneous data paths and 2 program paths before this counter can increment. This error indicates poor application architecture.

---

## Transmission Errors

**Words 26, 27  
Transmit Buffer  
Errors**

Increments when the M1 is unable to transmit an Ethernet response frame because all frame buffers are in use. For example, the M1 has 16 PING reply buffers. If all 16 PING buffers contain PING replies, ready to be transmitted, but this station's transmission is delayed because of collisions and backoff, and one more PING request is received, then the new PING request is discarded and the counter is incremented. This error can occur for PING, ARP, and connection attempt to server path. Although this error is theoretically possible, it is not usually encountered.

---

**Words 28, 29 Silo  
Underflow**

This field counts M1 TCP/IP retries. All M1 clients and server use the TCP/IP protocol which implements sequence numbers and timeouts. Whenever TCP/IP data is pushed from the M1, a subsequent acknowledgement of receipt of M1 data must be received within the timeout period, or else the M1 issues a retry. Retries may be the result of any of the following conditions:

- The original M1 data frame was garbled, corrupted, and lost
  - The target TCP/IP stack is operating more slowly than the M1 retry rate
- For Modbus 502 servers, the M1 initiates retries after (1, 1, 2, 2, 4, 8) seconds.

For Modbus 502 clients, the M1 retry rate is the larger of:

- 1/4 the health timeout for Ethernet I/O Scanner data (see *Accessing the Ethernet / I/O Scanner Screen* on page 322, OR:
  - 4 times the previous measured TCP/IP round trip time for i/o Scanner MSTR block.
- 

*Continued on next page*

## Description, Continued

---

**Words 30, 31**  
**Late Collision**

Increments when the transmit frame process is aborted because of late collision detected after the first 64 bytes of the frame was transmitted collision free. This error could possibly occur if the Ethernet cable is intermittently connected and disconnected.

---

**Words 32, 33**  
**Lost Carrier**

Increments whenever the Ethernet cable, connected to the M1, is disconnected from the hub. Also increments whenever the Ethernet cable, connected to the hub, is disconnected from the M1.

---

**Words 34, 35**  
**16 Collision**  
**Transmit Failure**

Transmit frame process was aborted after 16 consecutive collisions. The frame was not successfully transmitted out onto Ethernet link. This error should never occur.

---

---

# Using the I/OBus Port

# 6

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

Three TSX Momentum components offer I/OBus master capabilities:

- 171 CCS 760 00 Processor Adapter
- 171 CCC 760 10 Processor Adapter
- 171 CCC 960 20 Processor Adapter

This section describes the I/OBus port, explains how I/OBus works, provides guidelines for creating I/OBus networks with TSX Momentum components, and describes recommended cable accessories.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
I/O Bus Port	148
How I/OBus Works	149
Network Status Indication in the M1 Ethernet Module	150
Guidelines for I/OBus Networks	151
Cable Accessories	153
Pinouts	155

## I/O Bus Port

---

### Introduction

The I/OBus port allows a Momentum CPU to assume bus master capabilities over as many as 255 slave devices over an Interbus cable.

---

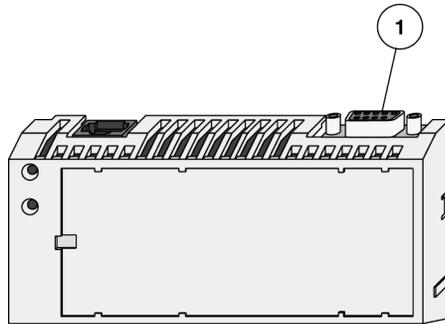
### Connector Type

The I/OBus port has a female 9-pin D-shell connector.

---

### Illustration

The following illustration shows the position of the I/OBus port on a Processor Adapter:



Label	Description
1	I/OBus port

---

---

## How I/OBus Works

---

**Introduction** This section describes how signals are passed and how data is transferred in an I/OBus network.

---

**How Signals Are Passed** I/OBus operates as a logical ring, with signals being passed by the master over a remote bus cable to each slave device in series. The slaves return signals to the master over the same cable.

---

**How Data is Transferred** The I/OBus functions as a logical shift register. The application's entire data stream, originating at the master, is transferred serially from slave to slave down the remote bus. Each slave regenerates the entire stream before passing it on. As a slave handles the stream data, it extracts the portion that is assigned to it and adds any output data to the stream.

---

**Transmission Speed** Data is transmitted at 500 kbits/s.

---

**Amount of data** The number of 16 bit words in the data stream is dependent on the processor model:

Model	Max Input Words	Max Output Words
171 CCS 760 00	128	128
171 CCC 760 10	256	256
171 CCC 960 20	256	256

---

## Network Status Indication in the M1 Ethernet Module

---

### Overview

The M1 Ethernet Module can provide I/OBus network status via the Module Status function in the programming panel or by a STAT element in user logic. The fourth word of the status element contains information regarding the integrity of the network.

---

### Operation

The IOBus status word contains a valid value only when the processor is running. A zero value indicates that normal I/OBus communication is occurring.

A non-zero value indicates a problem.

---

### Failure Indication

If there is a communications error, bit values in the I/OBus status word contain information on the failure mode, as follows:

#### **BITS 0 - 14**

These bits contain a value from 1 to 255, signifying the network position of the module that cannot be reached. For example, a value of 8 indicates a communications failure in accessing the 8<sup>th</sup> module on the network.

#### **BIT 15**

This bit contains a value of 0 or 1.

A value of zero indicates a general communication failure, for example, no power to the module or a break in its input cable.

A value of 1 indicates that communication is possible, but the I/OBus ID received from the module does not match the module type contained in the traffic cop for that position.

---

## Guidelines for I/OBus Networks

---

**Overview**

This section gives guidelines for creating an I/OBus network using a TSX Momentum CPU as bus master.

---

**Length**

The maximum distance between the Momentum CPU master and the farthest slave is 13 km (8 mi).

---

**Distance  
Between Nodes**

The maximum distance between nodes is 400 m (1300 ft).

---

**Number of  
Devices**

A network may consist of as many as 256 nodes, including one Momentum CPU bus master and up to 255 slave I/O devices.

---

**Acceptable Slave  
Devices**

An I/OBus slave device can be:

- A Momentum I/O base with a 170 INT 110 00 Interbus Communication Adapter mounted on it
  - A Modicon Terminal Block I/O module enabled for Interbus communications
  - A standard Interbus module designed by a third party manufacturer
- 

**Unacceptable  
Slave Devices**

The I/OBus network does not support Interbus-compatible devices that require the Interbus PCP protocol.

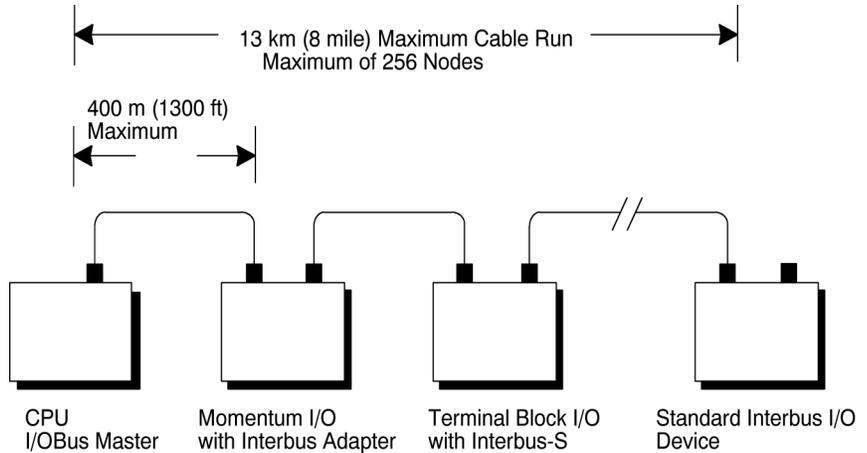
---

*Continued on next page*

## Guidelines for I/OBus Networks, Continued

---

**Network Scheme** The slave devices are distributed along a trunk, as shown in the illustration below.



## Cable Accessories

### Overview

Modicon provides several cabling solutions for I/OBus:

- Low profile cables in two lengths
- A 1 m cable with high profile rear shell
- A connector kit for building custom-length Interbus cables

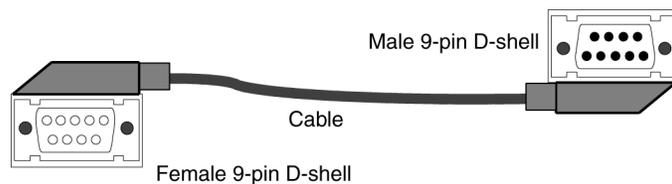
This section describes those solutions.

### Low Profile Cables

For side-by-side mounting of the CPU with Interbus I/O modules on a DIN rail or wall, Modicon provides two specially molded low profile cables.

Part Number	Length
170 MCI 007 00	11.4 cm (4.5 in)
170 MCI 100 01	100 cm (39 in)

These cables have a male 9-pin D-shell connector on one end and a female 9-pin D-shell on the other. The male connector plugs into the female I/OBus port on the Processor Adapter, and the female connector plugs into the male connector on the left side of a 170 INT 110 00 Interbus Communications Adapter on an I/O base. Additional cables can then be used to connect a series of I/O modules via their Interbus communication ports.



### 1 m Cable

A 1 m (39 in) Interbus cable (170 MCI 100 00) is also available to allow you to connect modules on separate DIN rails.



**Note:** The connectors on the 170 MCI 100 00 cable are high profile, the same type used in the connector kit.

*Continued on next page*

## Cable Accessories, Continued

---

### Interbus Cable Connector Kit

I/OBus communicates over Interbus full duplex cable. For custom cable lengths, Modicon offers an Interbus cable connector kit (part number 170 XTS 009 00). The kit includes two connectors, one male and one female, that can be soldered to an Interbus full duplex cable of the appropriate length.

The recommended cable is Belden 8103 or equivalent.



**Note:** The connectors in the 170 XTS 009 00 Kit are high profile.

---

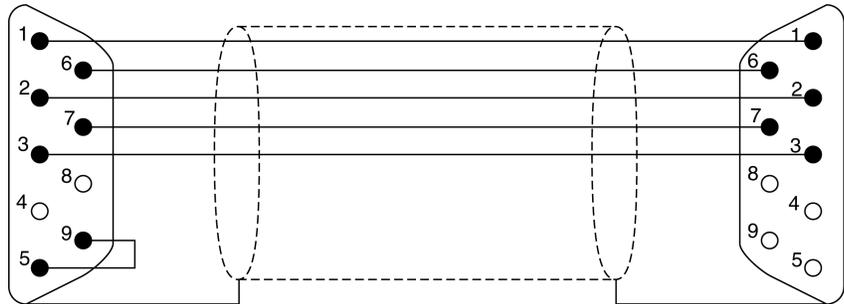
## Pinouts

### Interbus Cable

The following illustration shows how to wire the connectors of the remote bus cable:

Outgoing Remote Bus (pins)  
Male

Incoming Remote Bus (sockets)  
Female



Pin	Wire Color	Outgoing Connection	Pin	Wire Color	Ingoing Connection
1	Yellow	DO Data Out	1	Yellow	DO Data Out
2	Gray	DI Data In	2	Gray	DI Data In
3	Brown	Common	3	Brown	Common*
4		GND Reference conductor, fiber-optic adapter	4		GND* Reference conductor, fiber-optic adapter
5		Vcc Power-supply for fiber- optic adapter	5		Vcc* Power-supply for fiber- optic adapter
6	Green	DO_N Data Out Negated	6	Green	DO_N Data Out Negated
7	Pink	DI_N Data In Negated	7	Pink	DI_N Data In Negated
8		Vcc Additional power supply for fiber-optic adapter	8		Vcc* Additional power supply for fiber-optic adapter
9		Plug identification	9		Not used
* Physically isolated					



---

# Using the Modbus Plus Ports

# 7

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

Modbus Plus ports are available with:

- 172 PNN 210 22 Option Adapter (Single Port)
- 172 PNN 260 22 Option Adapter (Redundant Ports)

This section gives an overview of Modbus Plus networks for TSX Momentum components.



**Note:** The *Modbus Plus Network Planning and Installation Manual* (890 USE 100 00) provides details for the complete design and installation of a Modbus Plus cable system.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Modbus Plus Features for Momentum	158
Two Types of Modbus Plus Networks	159
Standard Cabling Schemes	161
Cluster Mode Cabling Schemes	163
Cable Accessories for Modbus Plus Networks	167
Pinouts and Wiring illustrations for Modbus Plus Networks	170
Modbus Plus Addresses	174
Peer Cop	176

## Modbus Plus Features for Momentum

---

### Introduction

When a Modbus Plus network is constructed entirely of Momentum components, it may take advantage of two new features:

- cluster mode, which allows small groups of devices to be linked by short lengths of cable;
  - supporting up to 64 nodes on a *single* section of cable.
- 

### Cluster Mode

A cluster may consist of up to eight Momentum devices. A network may contain up to eight clusters.

The cable between devices in a cluster may be 10 in to 3 ft. The cable between clusters or between a cluster and the trunk must be at least 10 ft.

The maximum length of the network continues to be 1500 ft. The maximum number of devices in a network continues to be 64.



**Note:** Only Momentum devices are allowed in a cluster.

---

### 64 Nodes

When a Modbus Plus network consists entirely of Momentum devices, then a single section of cable may support 64 nodes instead of the standard 32 nodes.

**Example:** If a single SA85 is added to a network of Momentum modules, the network is no longer Momentum only, but a mixture of devices. Each cable section must be limited to 32 nodes. Cable sections must be connected by a repeater.

---

---

## Two Types of Modbus Plus Networks

---

### I/O Networks and Supervisory Networks

In a distributed control environment, Modbus Plus can be used in either of two ways:

- As an I/O network
  - As a supervisory network
- 



### CAUTION

#### CRITICAL I/O MUST BE SERVICED IN AN I/O NETWORK

Design your Modbus Plus architecture to meet the needs of your network. Modbus Plus can offer deterministic I/O servicing or non-deterministic supervisory servicing of programming, user interface, and third party ModConnect devices. Do not use a supervisory network to service critical I/O.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.**

---

### I/O Networks

In a deterministic I/O network architecture, one CPU services up to 63 Momentum I/O modules, Terminal I/O modules or other Modbus Plus devices.



**Note:** When a programming panel or other human-machine interface (HMI) device is used as part of a deterministic Modbus Plus I/O network, it should be connected via the RS232 port on the CPU, not as a Modbus Plus node.

---

### Supervisory Networks

In a supervisory architecture, several intelligent processing devices share system data with each other. Many kinds of devices may be part of the network. You should be aware of each device's requirement for access to the network and of the impact each device will have on the timing of your network communication, especially when servicing non-critical (and non-deterministic) I/O.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Two Types of Modbus Plus Networks, Continued

---

### **What if I Need Both Types?**

If your system requires both supervisory and I/O handling architectures, one solution is to use a Processor Adapter with I/OBus capabilities as the I/O network and either a 172 PNN 210 22 or 172 PNN 260 22 Option Adapter with Modbus Plus for the supervisory network.

---

## Standard Cabling Schemes

---

### Introduction

In a standard Modbus Plus cabling scheme, each peer device connects via a drop cable to a tap along a trunk cable.

---

### Length

The maximum length of cable from one end of the network to the other is 1500 ft (450 m) if no repeaters are used.

You can use up to three Modicon RR85 Repeaters to extend the cable to up to 6000 ft (1800 m). Each repeater allows you to extend the cable 1500 ft (450 m).

Description	Part Number
Modicon RR85 Repeater	NW-RR85-000

---

### Distance Between Nodes

Nodes must be separated by at least 10 ft of cable. This requirement is more than satisfied by standard drop cables:

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus Drop Cable, 2.4 m / 8 ft	990 NAD 211 10
Modbus Plus Drop Cable 6 m / 20 ft	990 NAD 211 30

---

### Number of Devices

The maximum number of devices in a network is 64:

- If you use only Momentum products, you may use up to 64 devices on one cable section without a repeater.
  - If you use a mixture of devices, you may use up to 32 devices on one cable section. You must use a repeater to connect to another cable section. You may use up to three repeaters and four cable sections in all.
- 

### Termination

You must terminate both ends of the network. If your network consists of two or more sections separated by a repeater, each section must be terminated at both ends.

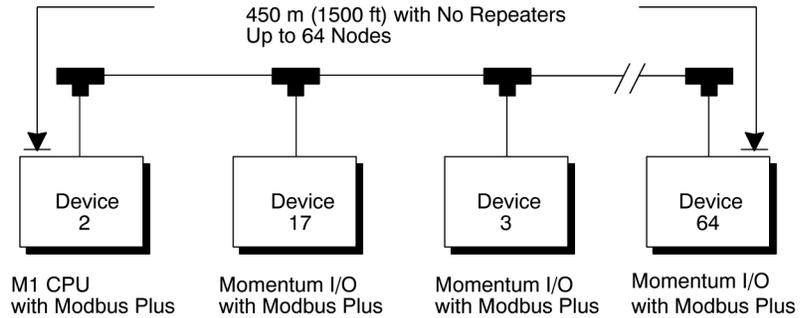
---

*Continued on next page*

## Standard Cabling Schemes, Continued

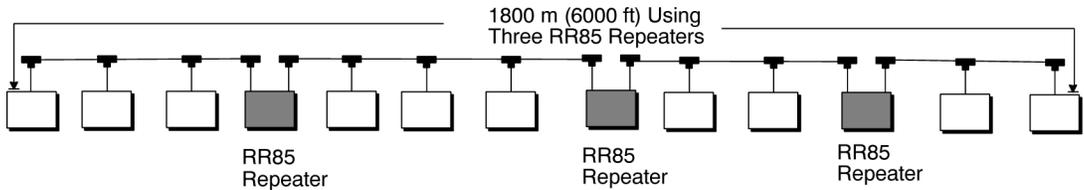
### Momentum Network

This illustration depicts a Modbus Plus network constructed with a Momentum CPU and Momentum I/O. One cable segment supports all 64 nodes. No repeater is used.



### Mixture of Devices

This illustration depicts a mixture of Momentum and other Modbus Plus devices. Three repeaters are used to connect four cable sections.



---

## Cluster Mode Cabling Schemes

---

### Introduction

In cluster mode, Momentum I/O devices may be placed in small groups, connected by much shorter lengths of cable than in standard Modbus Plus cabling schemes.

You may use clusters and standard single nodes in the same network.

---

### Length of Network

The maximum length of cable from one end of the network to the other is 1500 ft (450 m) if no repeaters are used.

You can use up to three Modicon RR85 Repeaters to extend the cable to up to 6000 ft (1800 m). Each repeater allows you to extend the cable 1500 ft (450 m).

Description	Part Number
Modicon RR85 Repeater	NW-RR85-000

---

### Number of Devices in Network

The maximum number of devices in a network is 64:

- If you use only Momentum products, you may use up to 64 devices on one cable segment without a repeater.
  - If you use a mixture of devices, you may use up to 32 devices on one cable section. You must use a repeater to connect to another cable section. You may use up to three repeaters and four cable sections in all.
- 

### Clusters in a Network

The maximum number of clusters in a network is 8. The maximum number of devices in a cluster is 8. Only Momentum devices may be used in the cluster.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Cluster Mode Cabling Schemes, Continued

### Termination

You must terminate both ends of the network with special terminating resistors.

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Resistor Plugs (pack of 2)	170 XTS 021 00

### Cable Between Nodes in a Cluster

The minimum length of cable between nodes in a cluster is 10 in (.25 m).

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 10
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 3 ft. Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 36

### Cable Between Clusters

The minimum length of cable between clusters is 10 ft (3 m).

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 10 ft. Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 021 80
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 30 ft. Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 80

### Drop Cables

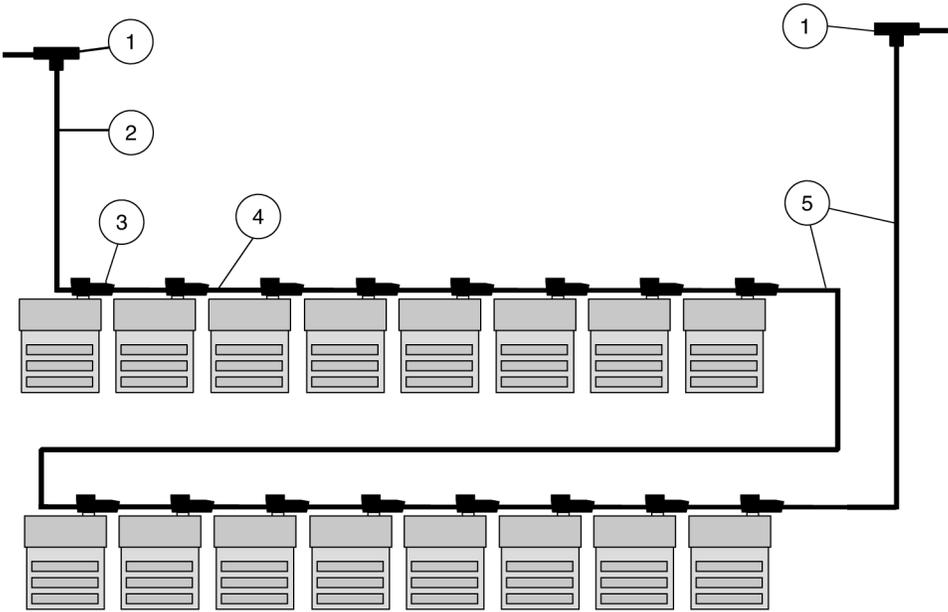
Drop cables connecting a cluster to the trunk cable must be at least 10 ft (3 m) long. A 10 ft drop cable is available. A 30 ft drop cable may be fabricated by removing one RJ45 connector from a 30 ft interconnect cable. Connect the open end of the cable to a Modbus Plus tap, using the wiring illustrations on page 170.

Description	Part Number
Modbus Plus 10 ft. Drop Cable	170 MCI 021 20
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 30 ft. Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 80

*Continued on next page*

### Cluster Mode Cabling Schemes, Continued

**Cluster Scheme #1** In this example, two clusters of Momentum I/O modules are connected in sequence. The trunk cable continues from the clusters in both directions.



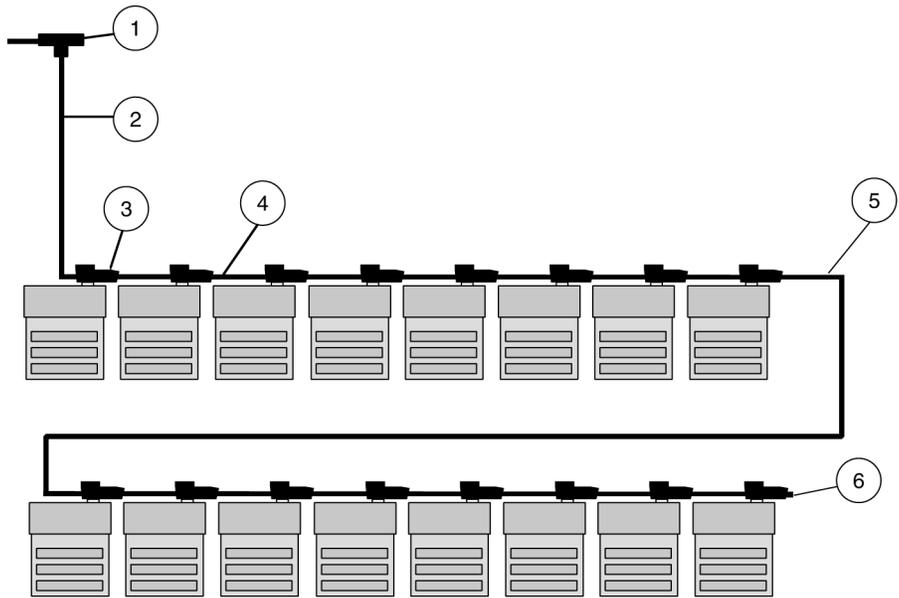
Label	Description	Part Number
1	Modbus Plus Tap	990 NAD 230 00
2	Modbus Plus 10 ft Drop Cable	170 MCI 021 20
3	Modbus Plus Connector "T" (DB9 base)	170 XTS 020 00
4	Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable OR Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 3 ft Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 10 170 MCI 020 36
5	Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 30 ft Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 80

*Continued on next page*

## Cluster Mode Cabling Schemes, Continued

### Cluster Scheme #2

In this example, two clusters are connected in sequence. The network ends with the second cluster.



Label	Description	Part Number
1	Modbus Plus Tap	990 NAD 230 00
2	Modbus Plus 10 ft Drop Cable	170 MCI 021 20
3	Modbus Plus Connector "T" (DB9 base)	170 XTS 020 00
4	Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable OR Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 3 ft Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 10 170 MCI 020 36
5	Modbus Plus / Modbus RS485 30 ft Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 80
6	Terminating resistor plug	170 XTS 021 00

## Cable Accessories for Modbus Plus Networks

### Overview

This section describes the cables, connector and terminating device which should be used in constructing a Modbus Plus network for TSX Momentum components.

### Cable Within Clusters

Cable for connecting two Modbus Plus devices within a cluster is available from Schneider Automation in two lengths. These cables have a black boot.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Short Interconnect Cable (10")	170 MCI 020 10	
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 3 ft. Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 36	

*Continued on next page*

---

**Cable Accessories for Modbus Plus Networks, Continued**

---

**Cable Between Clusters**

Cable for connecting two Modbus Plus clusters, or for fabricating drop cables to and from clusters, is available from Schneider Automation in two lengths. These cables have a black boot.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus Plus 10 ft. Drop Cable	170 MCI 021 20	 A coiled grey cable with a black boot at one end and a connector at the other.
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 10 ft. Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 021 80	 A coiled grey cable with black boots at both ends.
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 30 ft. Interconnect Cable	170 MCI 020 80	 A coiled grey cable with black boots at both ends.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Cable Accessories for Modbus Plus Networks, Continued

### DB9 Connector “T”

This connector is used in cluster mode with a Modbus Plus Communication Adapter or with the 172 PNN 210 22 or 172 PNN 260 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapters.



**Note:** Only one connector “T” may be used with each adapter, making it impossible to use redundant cabling in cluster mode.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus Plus Connector “T” (DB9 base)	170 XTS 020 00	An illustration of a grey rectangular connector with a circular inset showing a close-up of the DB9 base. The connector has the text 'SCHNEIDER AUTOMATION INC.' printed on its side.

### Terminating Resistor Plugs

Terminating resistor plugs are used with the connector “T” at the last device in a cluster when it is also the last device in the Modbus Plus network. The plug is red.

Description	Part Number	Illustration
Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Resistor Plugs (pack of 2)	170 XTS 021 00	An illustration of a clear plastic blister pack containing two red RJ45 terminating resistor plugs.

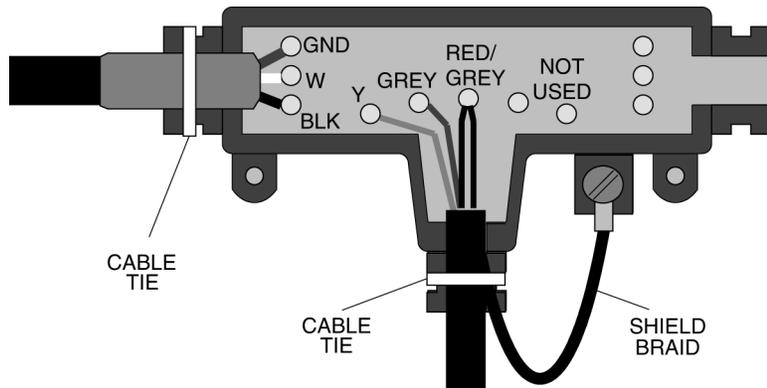
## Pinouts and Wiring illustrations for Modbus Plus Networks

### Overview

This section contains pinouts and wiring illustrations for constructing an Modbus Plus network for TSX Momentum components.

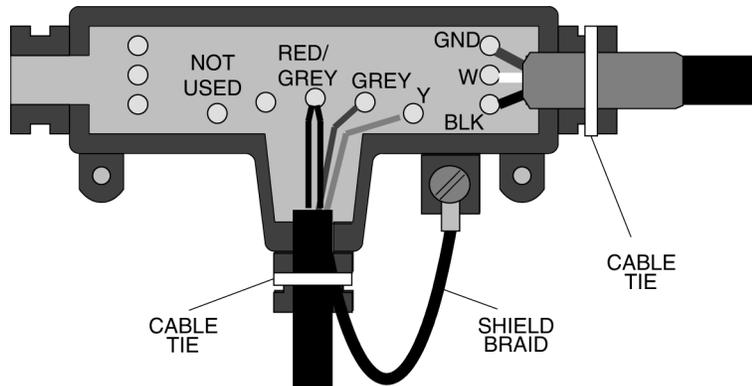
### Drop Cable from Tap to Cluster

The following illustration shows wiring an interconnect cable (with one RJ45 connector removed) from a Modbus Plus tap to a cluster:



### Drop Cable from Cluster to Tap

The following illustration shows wiring an interconnect cable (with one RJ45 connector removed) from a cluster to a Modbus Plus tap:

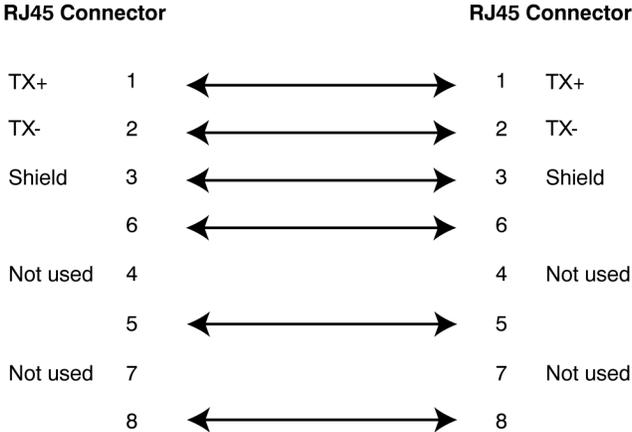


*Continued on next page*

## Pinouts and Wiring illustrations for Modbus Plus Networks, Continued

### Interconnect Cables

The following illustration shows the pinout for the 170 MCI 02x xx Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Interconnect Cables (10 in, 3 ft, 10 ft and 30 ft):

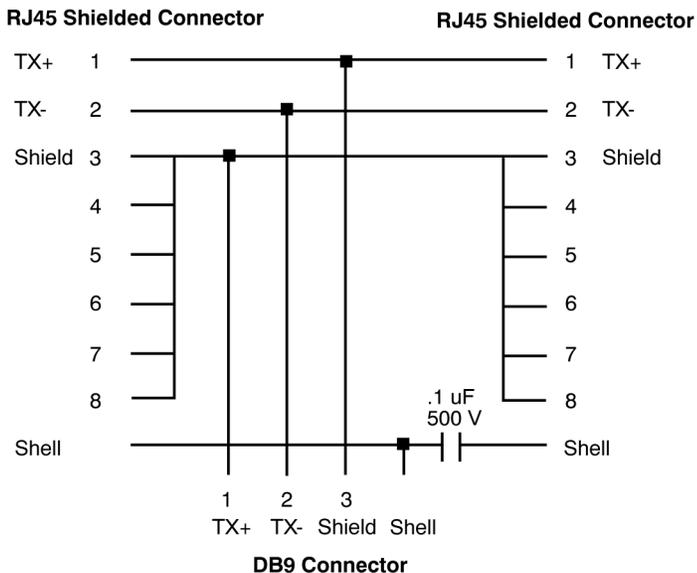


*Continued on next page*

## Pinouts and Wiring illustrations for Modbus Plus Networks, Continued

### Modbus Plus Connector "T" (DB9 Base)

The following illustration shows the pinout for the Modbus Plus Connector "T" (DB9 base):



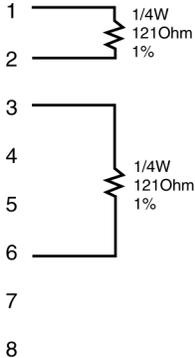
*Continued on next page*

## Pinouts and Wiring illustrations for Modbus Plus Networks, Continued

### Terminating Resistor Plugs

The following illustration shows the pinout for the Modbus Plus or Modbus RS485 Terminating RJ45 Resistor Plugs:

#### RJ45 Connector



## Modbus Plus Addresses

---

### Introduction

Modbus Plus devices function as peers on a logical ring. Each device accesses the network by acquiring a token frame that is passed in a rotating address sequence.

Each device on a Modbus Plus network needs a unique address in the range 1...64. The device address determines the logical order in which the network token will be passed from device to device.

---



### CAUTION

#### COMMUNICATION ERRORS MAY RESULT

Do not install a Modbus Plus Option Adapter before you have set its Modbus Plus address for your application. See your network administrator to get the Modbus Plus node address for this module.

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.**

---

### Address Sequence

The assignment of addresses does not have to map to the physical layout of the network—e.g., device 17 is placed physically before device 3. This is important to understand because the network's token rotation is defined by device addresses—e.g., device 2 will pass the token to device 3, device 3 to device 4, etc.

---

### Illegal Addresses

If you set the node address to 00 or to a value greater than 64:

- The COM LED will go ON steadily to indicate an illegal address assignment.
  - The Run LED will flash 4 times.
  - The Processor Adapter will not run until you set a valid, unused address on the Option Adapter and cycle power.
- 

*Continued on next page*

## Modbus Plus Addresses, Continued

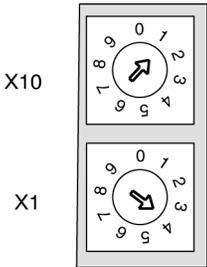
### Setting Modbus Plus Addresses

Two rotary switches on the Momentum Option Adapter are used to set the network address. The top switch (X10) sets the upper digit (tens) of the address. The lower switch (X1) sets the lower digit (ones) of the address.

Node Address	X10 Setting	X1 Setting
1 ... 9	0	1 ... 9
10 ... 19	1	0 ... 9
20 ... 29	2	0 ... 9
30 ... 39	3	0 ... 9
40 ... 49	4	0 ... 9
50 ... 59	5	0 ... 9
60 ... 64	6	0 ... 4

### Example of an Address

The illustration below shows a sample setting for address 14:



## Peer Cop

### What Is Peer Cop?

A Momentum M1 Processor Adapter has the ability to define point-to-point transactions between itself and other devices on the Modbus Plus network. The tool for defining these transactions is a panel software configuration utility known as Peer Cop.

### Configuring Network Devices with Peer Cop

Each device on the network can be configured to send and receive Peer Cop data.

- In a Modbus Plus I/O networking architecture, the CPU on the network can be used to configure the entire Peer Cop database.
- In a Modbus Plus supervisory architecture, each CPU on the network needs to be configured to handle the Peer Cop data that it will send or receive.

### Four Types of Data Transactions

Peer Cop allows you to define four types of data transactions:

Peer Cop Data Transaction	Function	Maximum Data Length/Token Frame
Global Output	Data to be broadcast globally to all devices on the network	32 words
Specific Output	Data to be transmitted to individual devices	32 words/device
		500 words to all specific devices
Global Input	Data messages received by all devices on the network	32 words
Specific Input	Data received by a specific device from a specific device	32 words/device
		500 words from all specific devices

### Sources and Destinations

Peer Cop uses defined data references (like PLC discretes or registers) as sources and destinations. For example, a block of registers can constitute the data source for the transmitting device, and that same or another block of registers can be the data destination for the receiving device.

*Continued on next page*

## Peer Cop, Continued

---

### **How Peer Cop Data Is Sent and Received**

The reception of Peer Cop source data and the delivery of Peer Cop destination data are handled by the token rotation. The token is always passed to the next logical device in the network's address sequence.

Because all the Modbus Plus devices monitor the network, any one device can extract the data addressed specifically to it. Likewise, all devices can extract global data. Peer Cop then enables the Modbus Plus device currently holding the token to direct specific data to individual devices and broadcast global data to all devices on the network as part of its token frame.

---

### **Effect of Using Peer Cop**

The net effect of using Peer Cop for data transactions is that each sending device can specify unique references as data sources and each receiving device can specify the same or different references as data destinations. When devices receive global data, each device can index to specific locations in the incoming data and extract specific lengths of data from those points. Data transactions therefore happen quickly as part of the token rotation and can be directly mapped between data references in the sending and receiving devices.

---



---

# Modsoft



---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

This part describes how to configure an M1 CPU, how to I/O map an I/OBus network, how to configure a Modbus Plus network with Peer Cop and how to save to Flash using Modsoft 2.6.

---

### In This Part

This part contains the following chapters:

For Information On...	See Chapter...	See Page...
Configuring an M1 CPU with Modsoft	8	181
I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Modsoft	9	223
Configuring a Modbus Plus Network in Modsoft with Peer Cop	10	233
Saving to Flash in Modsoft	11	279

---



---

# Configuring an M1 CPU with Modsoft

# 8

---

## At a Glance

### Introduction

This chapter explains how to configure a CPU using Modsoft 2.6. The procedures and examples described here can be applied with Modsoft Lite 2.6 as well.



**Note:** Modsoft 2.6 does not support the 171 CCC 960 20 or the 171 CCC 980 20 Processor Adapters. These Processor Adapters must be configured with Concept.

---

### In This Chapter

The chapter contains the following topics.

For This Topic...	See Section...	On Page...
Configuring the Processor Adapter	1	182
Configuring Option Adapter Features	2	199
Modifying Communication Port Parameters	3	208
I/O Mapping the Local I/O Points	4	218

## Section 8.1

# Configuring the Processor Adapter

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section describes how to configure a TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter using Modsoft 2.6.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter	183
Specifying an M1 Processor Type	186
Default Configuration Parameters	188
Changing the Range of Discrete and Register References	191
Changing the Size of Your Application Logic Space	193
Changing the Number of Segments	194
Changing the Size of the I/O Map	196
Establishing Configuration Extension Memory	198

---

## Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter

### Introduction

This section describes how to select an M1 Processor Adapter with Modsoft 2.6, starting from the Configuration Overview editor.



**Note:** For a full description of how to use Modsoft 2.6, refer to *Modicon Modsoft Programmer Software (V.2.6) User Guide (890 USE 115 00)*.

### Procedure

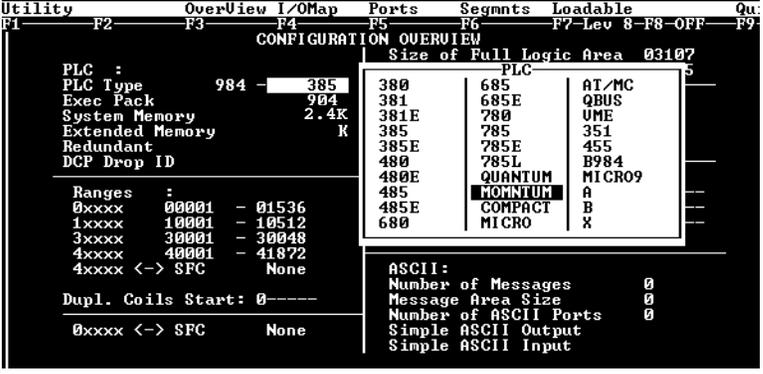
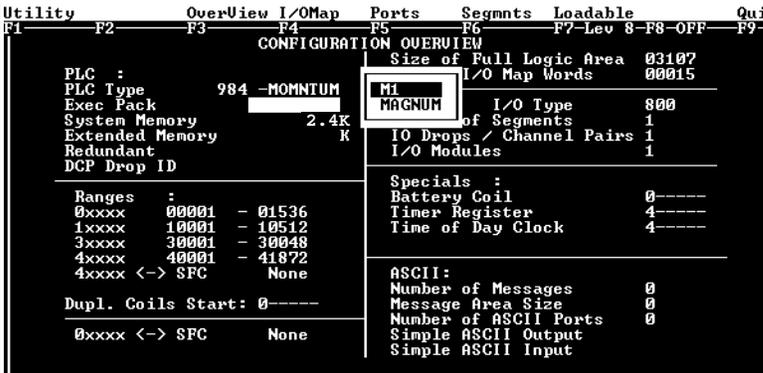
Follow the steps below to select an M1 Processor Adapter.

Step	Action
1	<p>With a new Configuration Overview editor on the screen, move the cursor onto the <b>OverView</b> selection on the top menu bar.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A pull-down list of options appears.</p> <p>The screenshot shows the Configuration Overview editor with the 'PLC Type' menu open. The menu options are: PLC Type, Ranges, I/O, ASCII, Specials, Reset Default, SFC ON, SFC OFF, Duplicate Coils. The background shows the following configuration parameters:</p> <pre> Utility      OverView I/OMap  Ports  Segmnts  Loadable Cfg Ext  Quit F1-----F2-----Overview-----F6-----F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-----F9-----  PLC Type Ranges I/O ASCII Specials Reset Default SFC ON SFC OFF Duplicate Coils  OVERVIEW Size of Full Logic Area  03107 No. of I/O Map Words    00015  I/O : I/O Type          800 Number of Segments      1 IO Drops / Channel Pairs 1 I/O Modules             1  Specials : Battery Coil            0---- Timer Register          4---- Time of Day Clock       4----  ASCII: Number of Messages      0 Message Area Size       0 Number of ASCII Ports   0 Simple ASCII Output Simple ASCII Input  PLC Type displays the currently available PLCs for user selection.                     </pre>

Continued on next page

## Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter, Continued

Procedure,  
Continued

Step	Action																																											
2	<p>Move the cursor onto <b>PLC Type</b> in the pulldown list and push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The following list of PLC types appears on the screen:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW' window with the following data:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>PLC</th> <th>Size of Full Logic Area</th> <th>03107</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>380</td> <td>685</td> <td>AT/MC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>381</td> <td>685E</td> <td>QBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td>381E</td> <td>780</td> <td>UME</td> </tr> <tr> <td>385</td> <td>785</td> <td>351</td> </tr> <tr> <td>385E</td> <td>785E</td> <td>455</td> </tr> <tr> <td>480</td> <td>785L</td> <td>B984</td> </tr> <tr> <td>480E</td> <td>QUANTUM</td> <td>MICRO9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>485</td> <td>MOMNTUM</td> <td>A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>485E</td> <td>COMPACT</td> <td>B</td> </tr> <tr> <td>680</td> <td>MICRO</td> <td>X</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>ASCII:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Number of Messages</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Message Area Size</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Number of ASCII Ports</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Simple ASCII Output</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Simple ASCII Input</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	PLC	Size of Full Logic Area	03107	380	685	AT/MC	381	685E	QBUS	381E	780	UME	385	785	351	385E	785E	455	480	785L	B984	480E	QUANTUM	MICRO9	485	MOMNTUM	A	485E	COMPACT	B	680	MICRO	X	Number of Messages	0	Message Area Size	0	Number of ASCII Ports	0	Simple ASCII Output		Simple ASCII Input	
PLC	Size of Full Logic Area	03107																																										
380	685	AT/MC																																										
381	685E	QBUS																																										
381E	780	UME																																										
385	785	351																																										
385E	785E	455																																										
480	785L	B984																																										
480E	QUANTUM	MICRO9																																										
485	MOMNTUM	A																																										
485E	COMPACT	B																																										
680	MICRO	X																																										
Number of Messages	0																																											
Message Area Size	0																																											
Number of ASCII Ports	0																																											
Simple ASCII Output																																												
Simple ASCII Input																																												
3	<p>Move the cursor onto <b>MOMNTUM</b> and push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> You will be prompted to select between the M1 Processor type and the Magnum.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW' window with the following data:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>PLC</th> <th>Size of Full Logic Area</th> <th>03107</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>M1</td> <td>I/O Map Words</td> <td>00015</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAGNUM</td> <td>I/O Type</td> <td>800</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>of Segments</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>IO Drops / Channel Pairs</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>I/O Modules</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Specials:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Battery Coil</td> <td>0-----</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timer Register</td> <td>4-----</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Time of Day Clock</td> <td>4-----</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>ASCII:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Number of Messages</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Message Area Size</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Number of ASCII Ports</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Simple ASCII Output</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Simple ASCII Input</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	PLC	Size of Full Logic Area	03107	M1	I/O Map Words	00015	MAGNUM	I/O Type	800		of Segments	1		IO Drops / Channel Pairs	1		I/O Modules	1	Battery Coil	0-----	Timer Register	4-----	Time of Day Clock	4-----	Number of Messages	0	Message Area Size	0	Number of ASCII Ports	0	Simple ASCII Output		Simple ASCII Input										
PLC	Size of Full Logic Area	03107																																										
M1	I/O Map Words	00015																																										
MAGNUM	I/O Type	800																																										
	of Segments	1																																										
	IO Drops / Channel Pairs	1																																										
	I/O Modules	1																																										
Battery Coil	0-----																																											
Timer Register	4-----																																											
Time of Day Clock	4-----																																											
Number of Messages	0																																											
Message Area Size	0																																											
Number of ASCII Ports	0																																											
Simple ASCII Output																																												
Simple ASCII Input																																												
4	Place the cursor on <b>M1</b> and push <Enter>.																																											

Continued on next page

## Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter, Continued

---

### **Next Step**

You are now ready to specify the type of TSX M1 Momentum Processor Adapter for configuration.

---

## Specifying an M1 Processor Type

---

### Introduction

Once you have selected an M1 Processor Adapter in Modsoft 2.6, you must choose between three types of M1 processors.

- A 2.4K machine
- A 12.0K machine
- An 18.0K machine

These numbers refer to the amount of user memory in the CPU.

---

### Which Type Should I Choose?

Use the table below to determine which processor type to choose:

Processor Adapter	Type
171 CCS 700 00	2.4
171 CCS 700 10	2.4
171 CCS 760 00	12.0
171 CCC 760 10	18.0
171 CCS 780 00	2.4
171 CCC 780 10	18.0

---

### If You Choose the Wrong Type

If you choose the wrong machine type for the CPU you are configuring, you can run into the following kinds of problems:

- If you specify too much memory, Modsoft allows you to create a configuration and logic program that could be too big for the CPU you are using. When you try to transfer your program to the CPU, your transfer will fail.
  - If you specify too little memory, Modsoft restricts the size of your configuration and logic program, and may not allow you to I/O Map an I/OBus network (as described in *I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Modsoft* on page 223).
- 

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying an M1 Processor Type, Continued

**Procedure**

Follow the steps below to specify an M1 Processor Type.

Step	Action
1	<p>As a result of selecting an M1 Processor Adapter, you will be presented with a pop-up screen that allows you to select the machine type. Move the cursor onto the desired memory size (2.4, 12.0 or 18.0).</p>  <pre> Utility      OverView I/OMap  Ports   Segmnts  Loadable Cfg Ext  Quit F1          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7          F8          F9 ----- CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW ----- PLC : PLC Type      MOMENTUM Model        M1 System Memory 2.4K Extended Memory K  Size of Full Logic Area 01678 I/O Map Words          00032 I/O Type              MOMENTUM Number of Segments    1 Map Reserved Words    32  Ranges : 0xxxx 000001 - 001536 1xxxx 100001 - 100512 3xxxx 300001 - 300048 4xxxx 400001 - 401872 4xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC      None  Dupl. Coils Start: 0----- 0xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC      None  Specials : Battery Coil      0----- Timer Register    4----- Time of Day Clock 4----- Cfg. Extension Used/Size 0/ 0                     </pre>
2	Push <Enter>.

## Default Configuration Parameters

### Overview

This section describes the default configuration parameters.

### Defaults for a 2.4K Adapter

This sample Configuration Overview screen shows the default configuration parameters.

```

F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9
          CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW
          Size of Full Logic Area  01678
          No. of I/O Map Words    00032
          I/O : I/O Type          MOMENTUM
          Number of Segments      1
          I/O Map Reserved Words  32
          Specials :
          Battery Coil            0-----
          Timer Register          4-----
          Time of Day Clock       4-----
          Cfg. Extension Used/Size  0/      0

          Ranges :
          0xxxx  000001 - 001536
          1xxxx  100001 - 100512
          3xxxx  300001 - 300048
          4xxxx  400001 - 401872
          4xxxx <-> SFC          None

          Dupl. Coils Start: 0-----
          0xxxx <-> SFC          None

          Segments determines the order and kind of segment processing taking place.
    
```

### Defaults for a 12.0K Adapter

This sample Configuration Overview screen shows the default configuration parameters:

```

Utility      OverView I/OMap      Segmnts Loadable Cfg Ext Quit
F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9
          CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW
          Size of Full Logic Area  11532
          No. of I/O Map Words    00032
          I/O : I/O Type          MOMENTUM
          Number of Segments      1
          I/O Map Reserved Words  32
          Specials :
          Battery Coil            0-----
          Timer Register          4-----
          Time of Day Clock       4-----
          Cfg. Extension Used/Size  0/      0

          Ranges :
          0xxxx  000001 - 001536
          1xxxx  100001 - 100512
          3xxxx  300001 - 300048
          4xxxx  400001 - 401872
          4xxxx <-> SFC          None

          Dupl. Coils Start: 0-----
          0xxxx <-> SFC          None

          Ports access the PLCs MODBUS and ASCII ports for data transmission.
    
```

*Continued on next page*

## Default Configuration Parameters, Continued

### Defaults for an 18.0 Adapter

This sample Configuration Overview screen shows the default configuration parameters:

```

Utility      I/OMap  Ports  Segmnts  Loadable Cfg Ext  Quit
F1          test    F3      F4      F5      F6      F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9

CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW
-----
PLC :                               Size of Full Logic Area 17676
PLC Type MOMNTUM                    No. of I/O Map Words  00032
Model  M1
System Memory 18.0K
Extended Memory K

I/O : I/O Type MOMENTUM
Number of Segments 1
I/O Map Reserved Words 32

Ranges :
0xxxx 000001 - 001536
1xxxx 100001 - 100512
3xxxx 300001 - 300048
4xxxx 400001 - 401872
4xxxx <-> SFC None

Dupl. Coils Start: 0-----

0xxxx <-> SFC None

Specials :
Battery Coil 0-----
Timer Register 4-----
Time of Day Clock 4-----
Cfg. Extension Used/Size 0/ 0
    
```

Overview allows access to PLC type, ranges, I/O, ASCII, and Specials.

*Continued on next page*

## Default Configuration Parameters, Continued

---

### Default Values

Here are the default parameters:

Parameter	2.4K Adapter	12.0K Adapter	18.0K Adapter
Coils in state RAM	1536 (0x)	1536 (0x)	1536 (0x)
Discrete inputs in state RAM	512 (1x)	512 (1x)	512 (1x)
Input registers in state RAM	48 (3x)	48 (3x)	48 (3x)
Output registers in state RAM	1872 (4x)	1872 (4x)	1872 (4x)
Bytes of user memory space available for application logic	1678	13100	17676
Words of user memory space for the I/O Map	32	512	32
I/O logic segments	One, which will allow you to I/O Map the I/O points on the local base unit	One, which will allow you to I/O Map the I/O points on the local base unit	One, which will allow you to I/O Map the I/O points on the local base unit
Memory allocated for configuration extension	None	None	None

---

## Changing the Range of Discrete and Register References

---

### Introduction

This section provides guidelines and a procedure for changing the range of discrete (0x and 1x) and register (3x and 4x) references.

---

### Guidelines

When you change the range of discrete and register references, follow these guidelines:

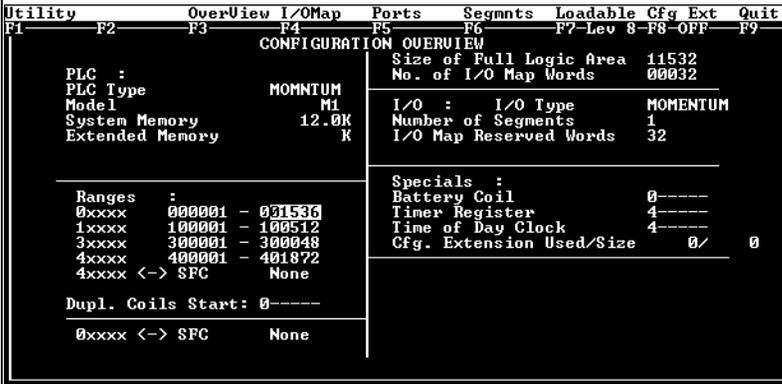
- Adjust the range of discretets in increments of 16. Sixteen discretets consume one word.
  - Adjust the range of registers in increments of 1. Each register consumes one word.
  - The total number of register and discrete references cannot exceed 3k words.
  - A minimum configuration of 16 0x discretets, 16 1x discretets, one 3x register, and one 4x register is required.
- 

*Continued on next page*

## Changing the Range of Discrete and Register References, Continued

**Procedure**

From the Configuration Overview screen, follow the steps below to change the range of discrete and register references:

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Overview menu, select <b>Ranges</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor will appear in the Ranges field of the editor on the high range 0x value.</p>  <pre> Utility      OverView I/OMap  Ports  Segmnts  Loadable Cfg Ext  Quit F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7 Lev 8-F8 OFF  F9           CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW           Size of Full Logic Area  11532           No. of I/O Map Words     00032           I/O : I/O Type           MOMENTUM           Number of Segments       1           I/O Map Reserved Words   32           -----           Specials :           Battery Coil             0-----           Timer Register            4-----           Time of Day Clock         4-----           Cfg. Extension Used/Size  0/      0           -----           Ranges :           0xxxx 000001 - 021536           1xxxx 100001 - 100512           3xxxx 300001 - 300048           4xxxx 400001 - 401872           4xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC           None           Dupl. Coils Start: 0-----           0xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC           None           </pre>
2	<p>Modify the range of your discrete and register references by changing the high value, in keeping with the guidelines described above. Press <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> after completing each field.</p>

## Changing the Size of Your Application Logic Space

---

### Introduction

The number shown in the Size of Full Logic Area field in the Configuration Overview screen indicates the total amount of memory available for your application logic. You cannot directly enter this field to modify the value. You can, however, change the amount of memory available by manipulating the size of other fields in the Configuration Overview screen.

---

### Example 1

If you reduce the size of the I/O Map area, the number in the Full Logic Area field automatically increases. Say you are using a 12.0K machine and you change the size of the I/O Map from the default value of 512 to 256—a decrease of 256 words. The default Size of Full Logic Area will automatically increase from 1198 to 1454.

---

### Example 2

Similarly, if you allocate some number of words to configuration extension memory (to support Peer Cop), you will reduce the Size of Full Logic Area by the number of words allocated the configuration extension memory.

---

## Changing the Number of Segments

---

### **Introduction**

The number of segments specified in the Configuration Overview screen determines the number of I/O Map drops that you will be able to set up for your CPU.

The number of segments you will need depends on whether your Processor Adapter will support an I/OBus network.

---

### **For I/OBus Networks**

You must change the number of segments to 2 if you want to create an I/O Map to support an I/OBus network.

---

### **For All Other Cases**

The default number of segments (1) is correct. You only need one drop because the only points to be I/O Mapped are those on the local base.

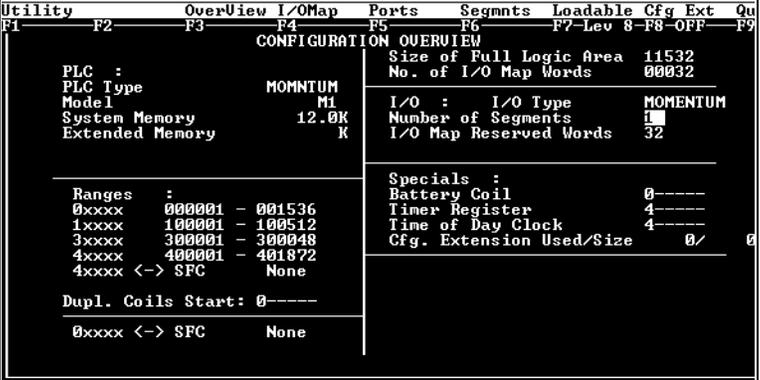
---

*Continued on next page*

## Changing the Number of Segments, Continued

### Procedure

From the Configuration Overview screen, follow the steps below to change the number of segments:

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Overview menu, select <b>I/O</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor will appear in the I/O field of the editor on the number of segments.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW' screen with the following details:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PLC : MOMNTUM</li> <li>PLC Type : MOMNTUM</li> <li>Model : M1</li> <li>System Memory : 12.0K</li> <li>Extended Memory : K</li> <li>Size of Full Logic Area : 11532</li> <li>No. of I/O Map Words : 00032</li> <li>I/O : I/O Type : MOMENTUM</li> <li>Number of Segments : <u>1</u></li> <li>I/O Map Reserved Words : 32</li> <li>Specials : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Battery Coil : 0-----</li> <li>Timer Register : 4-----</li> <li>Time of Day Clock : 4-----</li> <li>Cfg. Extension Used/Size : 0/</li> </ul> </li> <li>Ranges : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0xxxx : 000001 - 001536</li> <li>1xxxx : 100001 - 100512</li> <li>3xxxx : 300001 - 300048</li> <li>4xxxx : 400001 - 401872</li> <li>4xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC : None</li> </ul> </li> <li>Dupl. Coils Start : 0-----</li> <li>0xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC : None</li> </ul>
2	Type the new number of segments.
3	Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> .

## Changing the Size of the I/O Map

---

### Introduction

The default size of the I/O Map and your options vary, depending on whether or not your Processor Adapter supports an I/OBus network.

---

### Processors For I/O Bus Networks

With I/OBus, an I/O Map table is used to define the number, location, and type of I/O devices on the network bus.

Default	512 words
Minimum	17 words

---

### All Other Processors

Other Processor Adapters only use the I/O Map for local I/O. The default of 32 words is sufficient for any TSX Momentum I/O base. Depending on the requirements of your I/O base, you may be able to reduce the number of words to the minimum, 17, in order to increase the size of the full logic area.

Default	32 words
Minimum	17 words

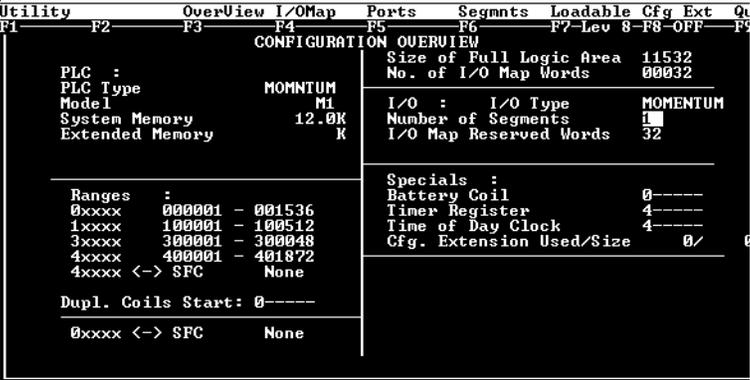
---

*Continued on next page*

## Changing the Size of the I/O Map, Continued

### Procedure

From the Configuration Overview screen, follow the steps below to change the size of the I/O Map:

Step	Action																																																																																																																																	
1	<p>From the Overview menu, select <b>I/O</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor will appear in the I/O field of the editor on the number of segments.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW' screen with the following data:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Utility</th> <th>OverView</th> <th>I/OMap</th> <th>Ports</th> <th>Segmnts</th> <th>Loadable</th> <th>Cfg Ext</th> <th>Qu</th> </tr> <tr> <th>F1</th> <th>F2</th> <th>F3</th> <th>F4</th> <th>F5</th> <th>F6</th> <th>F7-Lev 8</th> <th>F8-OFF</th> <th>F9</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="8" style="text-align: center;">CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PLC :</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Size of Full Logic Area</td> <td>11532</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>PLC Type</td> <td></td> <td>MOMNTUM</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>No. of I/O Map Words</td> <td>00032</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Model</td> <td></td> <td>M1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>I/O :</td> <td>I/O Type</td> <td>MOMENTUM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>System Memory</td> <td></td> <td>12.0K</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Number of Segments</td> <td>1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Extended Memory</td> <td></td> <td>K</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>I/O Map Reserved Words</td> <td>32</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="8">Ranges :</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0xxxx</td> <td></td> <td>000001 - 001536</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Specials :</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1xxxx</td> <td></td> <td>100001 - 100512</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Battery Coil</td> <td>0-----</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3xxxx</td> <td></td> <td>300001 - 300048</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Timer Register</td> <td>4-----</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4xxxx</td> <td></td> <td>400001 - 401872</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Time of Day Clock</td> <td>4-----</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>4xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC</td> <td></td> <td>None</td> <td>Cfg. Extension Used/Size</td> <td>0/</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="8">Dupl. Coils Start: 0-----</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>0xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC</td> <td></td> <td>None</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Utility	OverView	I/OMap	Ports	Segmnts	Loadable	Cfg Ext	Qu	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7-Lev 8	F8-OFF	F9	CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW								PLC :					Size of Full Logic Area	11532		PLC Type		MOMNTUM			No. of I/O Map Words	00032		Model		M1			I/O :	I/O Type	MOMENTUM	System Memory		12.0K			Number of Segments	1		Extended Memory		K			I/O Map Reserved Words	32		Ranges :								0xxxx		000001 - 001536			Specials :			1xxxx		100001 - 100512			Battery Coil	0-----		3xxxx		300001 - 300048			Timer Register	4-----		4xxxx		400001 - 401872			Time of Day Clock	4-----				4xxxx <-> SFC		None	Cfg. Extension Used/Size	0/		Dupl. Coils Start: 0-----										0xxxx <-> SFC		None			
Utility	OverView	I/OMap	Ports	Segmnts	Loadable	Cfg Ext	Qu																																																																																																																											
F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7-Lev 8	F8-OFF	F9																																																																																																																										
CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW																																																																																																																																		
PLC :					Size of Full Logic Area	11532																																																																																																																												
PLC Type		MOMNTUM			No. of I/O Map Words	00032																																																																																																																												
Model		M1			I/O :	I/O Type	MOMENTUM																																																																																																																											
System Memory		12.0K			Number of Segments	1																																																																																																																												
Extended Memory		K			I/O Map Reserved Words	32																																																																																																																												
Ranges :																																																																																																																																		
0xxxx		000001 - 001536			Specials :																																																																																																																													
1xxxx		100001 - 100512			Battery Coil	0-----																																																																																																																												
3xxxx		300001 - 300048			Timer Register	4-----																																																																																																																												
4xxxx		400001 - 401872			Time of Day Clock	4-----																																																																																																																												
		4xxxx <-> SFC		None	Cfg. Extension Used/Size	0/																																																																																																																												
Dupl. Coils Start: 0-----																																																																																																																																		
		0xxxx <-> SFC		None																																																																																																																														
2	<p>Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves to the I/O Map Reserved Words field.</p>																																																																																																																																	
3	<p>Modify the I/O Map size by typing a new number in this field.</p>																																																																																																																																	
4	<p>Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p>																																																																																																																																	

## Establishing Configuration Extension Memory

---

### Introduction

By default, no memory space is allocated for configuration extension memory. If you want to use the Peer Cop capability to handle Modbus Plus communications, you need to define some configuration extension memory to enable Peer Cop.

Extension memory is specified as a number of 16-bit words. That number is entered in the `ExtSize` entry of the Configuration editor. Once an adequate number of words has been specified here, **Peer Cop** will be enabled in the `CfgExt` pulldown list.

---

### How Much Memory?

The minimum Peer Cop `ExtSize` memory requirement is 20 words; the maximum is 1366 words.

Follow these guidelines for estimating the amount of extension memory you will need for your Peer Cop database:

For...	Add...	Up to a maximum of...
Overhead	9 words	--
Global output	5 words	--
Global input	number of words= number of devices x (1 + 2 x number of device subentries)	1088 words
Specific output	2 words for every device entry in Peer Cop	128 words
Specific input	2 words for every device entry in Peer Cop	128 words

---

### Procedure

From the Configuration Overview screen, follow the steps below to establish configuration extension memory:

Step	Action
1	From the Cfg Ext menu, select <b>Cfg. Extension Size</b> . <b>Result:</b> The cursor will appear in the Cfg. Extension Used/Size entry.
2	Type the desired size.
3	Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> .

---

## Section 8.2

# Configuring Option Adapter Features

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section describes how to implement the battery backup and time-of-day (TOD) clock features of the TSX Momentum Option Adapters.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil	200
Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock	202
Setting the Time	204
Reading the Time-of-Day Clock	207

---

## Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil

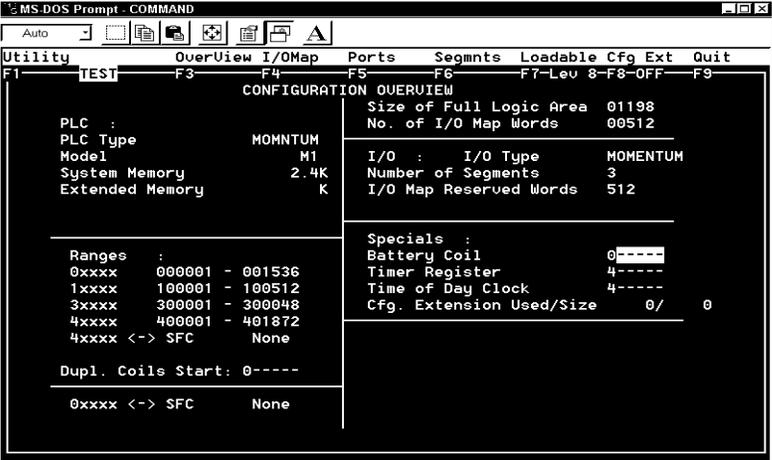
### Introduction

Since the Option Adapter does not have an LED to indicate when the battery is low, we recommend that you reserve a 0x reference to monitor the health of the battery.

This section describes how to reserve and monitor a battery coil, using the Configuration Overview editor in Modsoft 2.6.

### Reserving a Battery Coil

To reserve a battery coil, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Overview menu, select <b>Specials</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves into the Battery Coil field on the Configuration Overview screen.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW' window. The 'Specials' menu option is highlighted. The window displays the following information:</p> <pre> PLC : PLC Type      MOMNTUM Model         M1 System Memory 2.4K Extended Memory K  Ranges : 0xxxx 000001 - 001536 1xxxx 100001 - 100512 3xxxx 300001 - 300048 4xxxx 400001 - 401872 4xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC      None  Dupl. Coils Start: 0----- 0xxxx &lt;-&gt; SFC      None  Specials : Battery Coil      0----- Timer Register    4----- Time of Day Clock 4----- Cfg. Extension Used/Size 0/ 0                     </pre>
2	<p>Enter a coil number in the range of available 0xxxx references.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If you have set the range of 0x's at 000001...001536, you might want to enter the reference value of the last coil—1536.</p>
3	<p>Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil, Continued

---

### Monitoring the Battery Coil

Monitor the battery coil in ladder logic or tie it to a lamp or alarm that will indicate when the battery is low.

---

### Interpreting the Battery Coil

The battery coil will always read either 0 or 1.

- A coil state of 0 indicates that the battery is healthy.
  - A coil state of 1 indicates that the battery should be changed.
-

## Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock

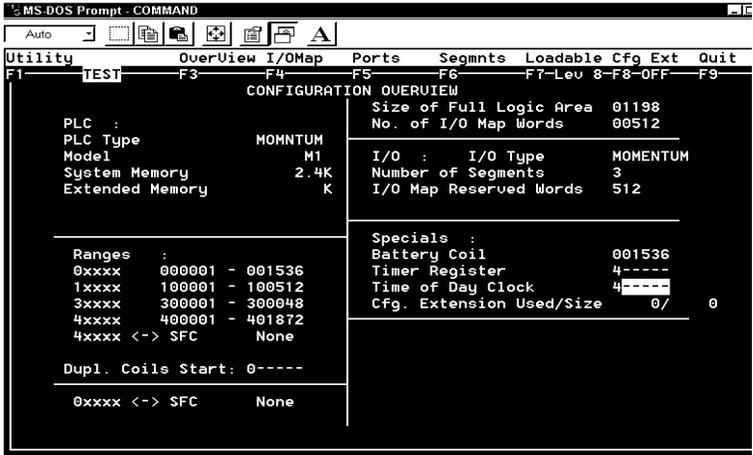
### Overview

Each Option Adapter has a time-of-day clock. To use this feature, you must reserve a block of eight 4x registers.

This section describes how to reserve those registers, using Modsoft 2.6.

### Reserving Registers for the TOD Clock

To reserve registers for the time-of-day clock, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Overview menu, select <b>Specials</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves into the Battery Coil field on the Configuration Overview screen.</p>
2	<p>Push the down arrow key twice to move the cursor into the Time of Day Clock field.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW' screen in a DOS-style window. The 'Specials' section is expanded, and the 'Time of Day Clock' field is highlighted with a cursor. The screen displays various system parameters such as PLC Type (MOMNTUM), Model (M1), System Memory (2.4K), and I/O Map Reserved Words (512). The 'Specials' section includes Battery Coil (001536), Timer Register (4----), Time of Day Clock (4----), and Cfg. Extension Used/Size (0/ 0).</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock, Continued

### Reserving Registers for the TOD Clock, Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>Enter a number (the first in a series of eight) in the range of available 4xxx references.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If you want registers 400100...400107 reserved for the TOD clock, enter 100.</p>
4	<p>Push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The reference value you specified and the seven that follow it are now reserved for TOD clock data.</p> <pre> Specials : Battery Coil      001536 Timer Register    4----- Time of Day Clock 400100 - 400107 Cfg. Extension Used/Size  0/  0           </pre>

### Next Step

Setting the time.

## Setting the Time

---

### Overview

Once you have reserved a block of registers for the time-of-day clock, you have to set the correct time. Modsoft offers two ways to do this:

- using the Set Hardware Clock dialogue
- setting the register bits individually



**Note:** The time-of-day clock complies with guidelines for the year 2000.

---

### Option 1

You must be online or in combined mode to access the Set Hardware Clock dialogue.

Step	Action
1	From the PlcOps menu, select <b>Set Hardware Clock</b> .  <b>Result:</b> The Set Hardware Clock dialogue appears.
2	You may set the time directly or copy the current time setting from your programming panel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To set the time directly, proceed to step 3.</li> <li>● To copy the setting from your programming panel, proceed to step 4.</li> </ul>
3	The time setting for your programming panel is displayed on the left. The controller time setting is displayed on the right. The time is expressed as hh:mm:ss. The date is expressed as mm-dd-yy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To modify the settings, type a new value in the date or time field for the controller.</li> <li>● To confirm the default settings or your modified settings, press <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</li> </ul>
4	To copy the current time setting from your programming panel, type <b>Y</b> in response to the question: Write PANEL clock data to PLC? (Y/N). Then press <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> .

*Continued on next page*

## Setting the Time, Continued

### Option 2

Go online and set the register values individually, using the following guidelines and procedure for setting the status bits and setting the time bits. The CPU must be running while you are setting the bits.

### Setting the Status Bits

The control register (4x) uses its four most significant bits to report status:

Control Register															
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
			1 = error												
		1 = All clock values have been set													
	1 = Clock values are being read														
1 = Clock values are being set															

### Setting the Time Bits

The following table shows how the registers handle time-of-day clock data, where register 4x is the first register in the block reserved for the clock:

Register	Data Content
4x	The control register
4x + 1	Day of the week (Sunday = 1, Monday = 2, etc.)
4x + 2	Month of the year (Jan = 1, Feb = 2, etc.)
4x + 3	Day of the month (1...31)
4x + 4	Year (00...99)
4x + 5	Hour in military time (0...23)
4x + 6	Minute (0...59)
4x + 7	Second (0...59)

*Continued on next page*

## Setting the Time, Continued

---

**Procedure**

Follow the steps in the table below to set the register values for the time-of-day clock:

Step	Action
1	<p>Set the correct date and time in registers <math>4x + 1</math> through <math>4x + 7</math>.</p> <p>Example: To set the clock for Thursday, April 9, 1998 at 4:17:00, set the following values in the registers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <math>4x + 1</math> 5</li><li>● <math>4x + 2</math> 4</li><li>● <math>4x + 3</math> 9</li><li>● <math>4x + 4</math> 98</li><li>● <math>4x + 5</math> 4</li><li>● <math>4x + 6</math> 17</li><li>● <math>4x + 7</math> 00</li></ul>
2	Load the value <b>8000H</b> in register $4x$ to write the data to the clock.

---

---

## Reading the Time-of-Day Clock

---

### Overview

This section tells how to read the time-of-day clock and uses an example to describe how to interpret the time-of-day clock registers.

---

### Reading the Clock

Set the value **4000H** in register 4x to read data from the clock.

---

### Example

If you reserved registers 400100...400107 as your TOD clock registers, set the time bits, and then read the clock at 9:25:30 on Thursday, July 16, 1998, the registers would display the following values:

Register	Reading	Indication
400100	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	All clock values have been set; clock values are being read
400101	5 (decimal)	Thursday
400102	7 (decimal)	July
400103	16 (decimal)	16
400104	98 (decimal)	1998
400105	9 (decimal)	9 a.m.
40010 6	25 (decimal)	25 minutes
40010 7	30 (decimal)	30 seconds

---

## Section 8.3

# Modifying Communication Port Parameters

### Overview

---

**Purpose** The communication parameters on the Modbus ports are set at the factory. This section describes how to access the Port editor and how to edit the default parameters.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics.

For This Topic...	See Page...
Accessing the Port Editor Screen	209
Parameters Which Should Not Be Changed	210
Changing the Mode and Data Bits	211
Changing Parity	213
Changing the Baud Rate	214
Changing the Modbus Address	215
Changing the Delay	216
Changing the Protocol on Modbus Port 2	217

---

## Accessing the Port Editor Screen

### Introduction

Modbus port parameters can be modified using the Port editor in Modsoft 2.6. This screen is accessed from the Configuration Overview editor.

### How To Get There

To access the Port editor from the Configuration Overview editor, move the cursor onto the Ports selection on the top menu bar, then push <Enter>.

### Port Editor Showing Default Values

If you have not previously modified any port parameters, the following screen will appear. The screen shows the default parameters for two Modbus ports, 01 and 02.

If you have previously modified any communication port parameters, the new values will appear in the screen.

Utility	Default	Bridge	Quit						
F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7-Lev 8	F8-OFF	F9	
PORTS									Bridge Mode: N
Number	Mode	Data Bits	Parity	Stop Bits	Baud	Head-Slot	Address	Delay	Protocol
MODBUS									
01	RTU	8	EUEN	1	9600	0	1	10 ms	
02	RTU	8	EUEN	1	9600	0	1	10 ms	RS232

### Two Sets of Parameters

This screen will always show two sets of port parameters, even if your particular CPU configuration supports only Modbus Port 1. In that case, ignore any parameter values shown for Port 2.

## Parameters Which Should Not Be Changed

---

### Overview

Two parameters on the Port editor screen should not be changed. These are the stop bit and head-slot parameters.

---

### Stop Bit

Each port operates only with 1 stop bit. While Modsoft will allow you to select 2 stop bits, this setting is invalid.

---

### Head-Slot

The Head-Slot parameter is set to 0 and should be left at this value for the TSX Momentum M1 CPUs.

---

## Changing the Mode and Data Bits

### Introduction

From the Port editor screen, each port can be configured to operate in one of two possible modes – RTU or ASCII.

- If the mode is RTU, the number of data bits is always 8.
- If the mode is ASCII, the number of data bits is always 7.



**Note:** The factory-set default is 8-bit RTU.

### Procedure

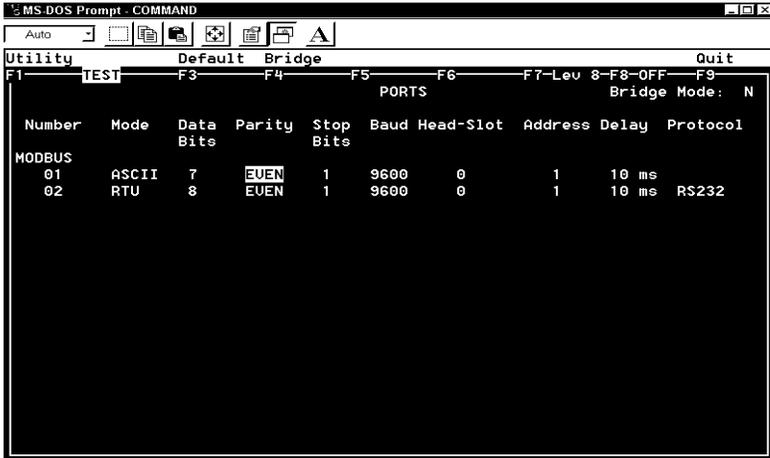
To change the mode and data bit parameters, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>Place the cursor on the current Mode entry for the Modbus port you want to enter. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A popup window appears in the top left corner of the screen displaying your two Mode options:</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Changing the Mode and Data Bits, Continued

**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Use an arrow key to toggle the cursor onto the desired Mode selection in the popup window, then push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Port editor screen is updated with the Mode type you have specified, the corresponding Data Bit value appears, and the cursor moves to the Parity column. For example, if you change Modbus port 1 from RTU mode to ASCII mode, the Data Bit value also automatically changes from 8 to 7, as shown below:</p>  <pre> MS-DOS Prompt - COMMAND Auto Utility          Default  Bridge          Quit F1-----F2-----F3-----F4-----F5-----F6-----F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9----- PORTS Bridge Mode: N  Number  Mode  Data  Parity  Stop  Baud  Head-Slot  Address  Delay  Protocol Bits MODBUS  01  ASCII  7  EVEN   1   9600    0         1    10 ms  02   RTU   8  EVEN   1   9600    0         1    10 ms  RS232                     </pre>

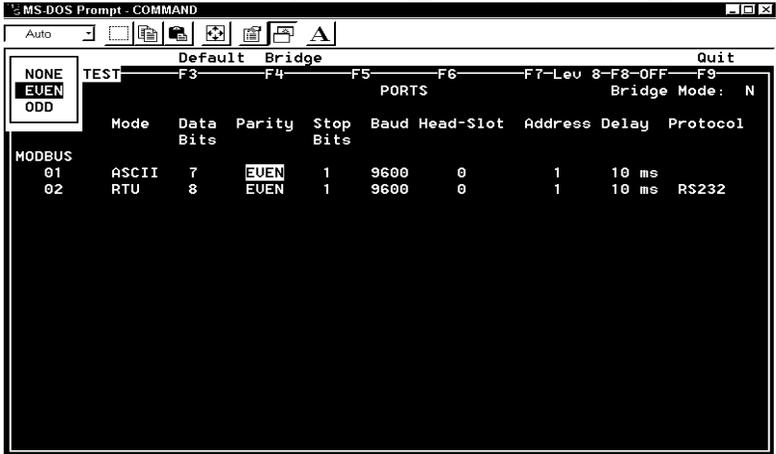
## Changing Parity

### Introduction

From the Port editor screen, a port can be configured for even, odd, or no parity checking. The factory-set default is EVEN parity.

### Procedure

To change the parity parameter, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>Place the cursor on the current Parity entry for the Modbus port you want to enter. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A popup window appears in the top left corner of the screen displaying your three Parity options:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a DOS-style window titled 'MS-DOS Prompt - COMMAND'. Inside, there's a 'Port Editor' interface. At the top, there are function keys: TEST (F3), Default (F4), Bridge (F5), PORTS (F6), F7-Lev 8, F8-OFF, F9, and Quit (F10). Below this is a table with columns: Mode, Data Bits, Parity, Stop Bits, Baud, Head-Slot, Address, Delay, and Protocol. Under the 'MODBUS' section, there are two entries: 01 (ASCII, 7 Data Bits, EVEN Parity, 1 Stop Bit, 9600 Baud, Head-Slot 0, Address 1, Delay 10 ms) and 02 (RTU, 8 Data Bits, EVEN Parity, 1 Stop Bit, 9600 Baud, Head-Slot 0, Address 1, Delay 10 ms, Protocol RS232). A popup menu is open in the top-left corner, showing 'NONE', 'EVEN' (highlighted), and 'ODD'. The 'Bridge Mode' is set to 'N'.</p>
2	<p>Use an arrow key to toggle the cursor onto the desired Parity selection in the popup window, then push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Port editor screen is updated with the Parity type you have specified, and the cursor moves to the Stop Bits column.</p>

## Changing the Baud Rate

### Overview

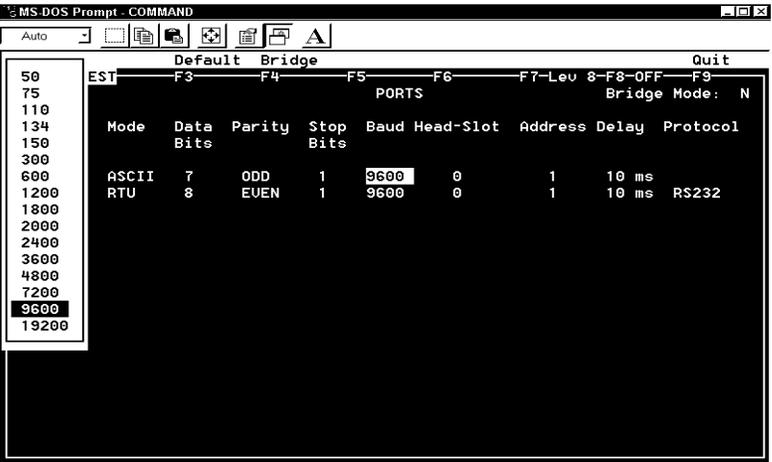
Each port can be configured for a baud in the range 50...19,200. Sixteen valid bauds are user-selectable. The factory-set default is 9600 baud.



**Note:** If you use a baud rate lower than 4800, you should adjust the default delay parameter. See *Changing the Delay* on page 216.

### Procedure

To change the baud parameter, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>Place the cursor on the current Baud entry for the Modbus port you want to enter. Push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A popup window appears in the top left corner of the screen displaying 16 baud values:</p> 
2	<p>Use an arrow key to toggle the cursor onto the desired Baud selection in the popup window, then push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Port editor screen is updated with the Baud number you have specified, and the cursor moves to the Head-Slot column.</p>

---

## Changing the Modbus Address

---

### Overview

Each port can be assigned a Modbus network address in the range 1...247. That address must be unique with respect to all other device addresses on the same Modbus networks.

Since Modbus Port 1 and Modbus Port 2 are always on different Modbus networks, they can both be assigned the same address value without conflict. The factory-set default for both ports is address 1.

---

### Procedure

From the Port editor screen, perform the steps in the following table to change the Modbus Address:

Step	Action
1	Place the cursor on the current Address entry for the Modbus port.
2	Type a number in the range 1...247. Push <Enter>.  <b>Result:</b> The Port editor screen is updated with the Address number you have typed, and the cursor moves to the Delay column.

---

## Changing the Delay

---

### Overview

The default value for the delay parameter is 10 ms. This value is appropriate for most TSX Momentum applications.

However, if you use baud rates lower than 4800, you should adjust the delay timing.

---

### Delay Timing

If you use baud rates lower than 4800, adjust the delay timing as indicated in the following table:

Baud Rate	Delay (in Msec)
2400	20
1200	30
600	50
300	100

---

### Valid Delay Values

The delay must always be a value between 10 and 200 ms, expressed in 10 ms increments.

---

### Procedure

From the Port editor screen, perform the steps in the following table to change the Delay parameter:

Step	Action
1	Place the cursor on the current Delay entry for the Modbus port.
2	Type a new value in the range 10 ... 200 ms, using 10 ms increments. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> .  <b>Result:</b> The Port editor screen is updated with the Delay you have specified.

---

## Changing the Protocol on Modbus Port 2

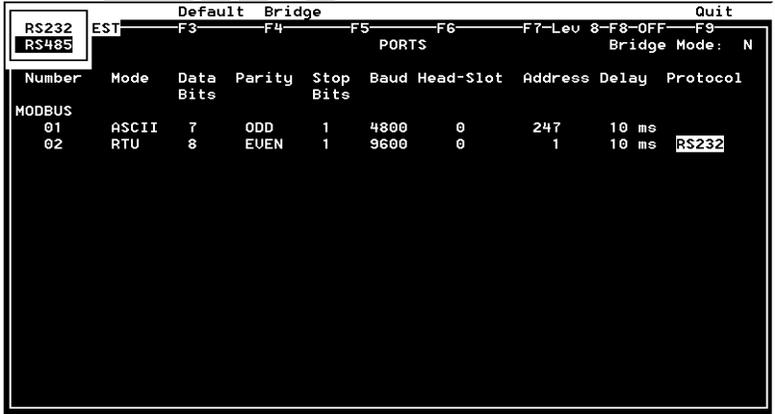
### Overview

If your TSX Momentum M1 CPU is using the Modbus Port 2 provided by the 172 JNN 210 32 Option Adapter, you can specify whether it will use the RS232 or RS485 protocol. The factory-set default for Modbus Port 2 is RS232.

If you are using the Modbus Port 2 provided on the 171 CCS 780 00 or 171 CCC 780 10 Processor Adapter, the port is hardwired as a dedicated RS485 protocol. However, you must change the default setting on the Port editor screen from RS232 to RS485, or the port will not function.

### Procedure

From the Port editor screen, perform the steps in the following table to change the Protocol on Modbus Port 2.

Step	Action
1	<p>Place the cursor on the current Protocol entry for Modbus port 2. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A popup window appears in the top left corner of the screen displaying the two protocol options:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window with the following content:</p> <pre> Default Bridge RS232 EST F3 F4 F5 F6 F7 Lev 8 F8 OFF F9 Quit RS485 PORTS Bridge Mode: N  Number Mode Data Parity Stop Baud Head-Slot Address Delay Protocol Bits Bits Bits MODBUS 01 ASCII 7 ODD 1 4800 0 247 10 ms 02 RTU 8 EUEN 1 9600 0 1 10 ms RS232                     </pre>
2	<p>Use an arrow key to toggle the cursor onto the desired protocol selection in the popup window, then push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Port editor screen is updated with the protocol you have specified.</p>

## Section 8.4

# I/O Mapping the Local I/O Points

### Accessing and Editing the I/O Map

---

#### Introduction

Every M1 Processor Adapter is assembled on an I/O base. The I/O points on the base are the local I/O for that processor.

As part of the configuration process, you need to create an I/O Map for the local I/O. The I/O Map assigns the appropriate range and type of (0x, 1x, 3x, or 4x) reference values from the CPU's state RAM to the input and/or output points on the local base unit.

---

#### Accessing an I/O Map Screen

To access an I/O Map screen from the Configuration Overview screen, move the cursor onto the **I/O Map** command on the top menu and push <Enter>.

**Result:** An I/O Map screen appears with the cursor placed in the Module field. The label in the top left corner of the screen identifies it as Type: MOMENTUM I/O.

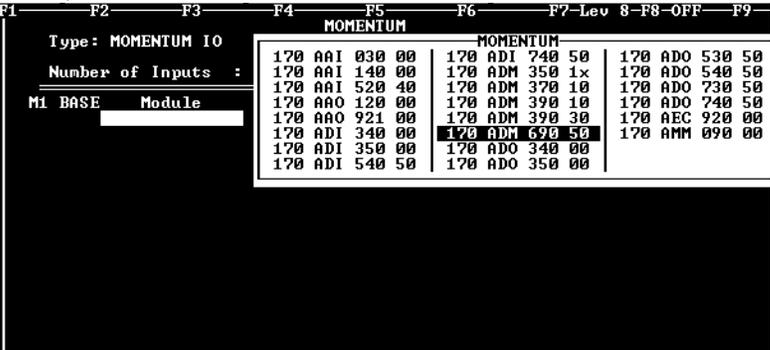
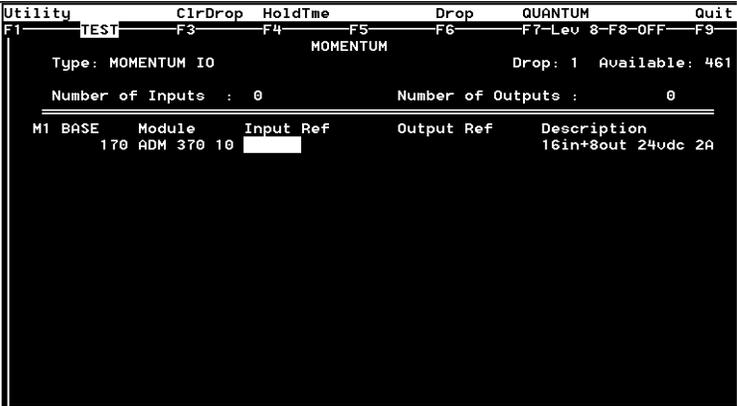
---

*Continued on next page*

## Accessing and Editing the I/O Map, Continued

### Editing the Local I/O Map

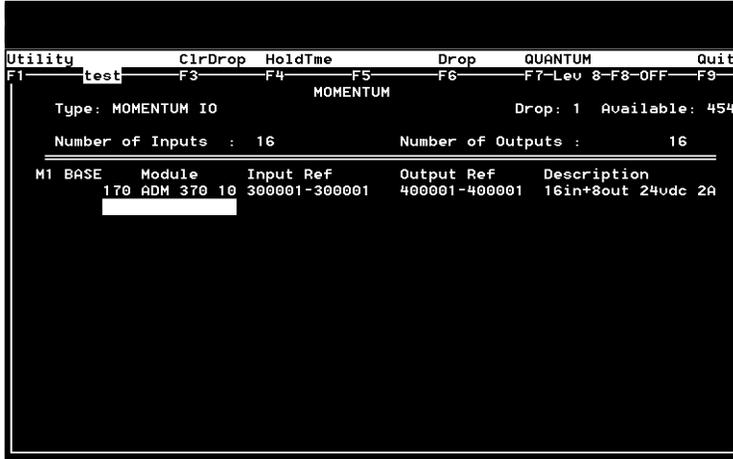
To edit the Local I/O Map, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>To select the local base unit for drop 1, push &lt;Shift&gt;&lt;?&gt; .</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A list of all available Momentum base units appears in a window over the I/O Map screen, as shown below. The list includes all Momentum I/O bases.</p>  <p>The 170 ADM 690 50 is a 120 UAC 10 point input/8 point output Module Base</p>
2	<p>Move the cursor onto the model number of your local base unit (e.g., the 170 ADM 370 10 24 VDC 16-point in/ 8-point out base in the sample screen). Push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The module type and description of the base you select appears in the (Drop 1) I/O Map screen:</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Accessing and Editing the I/O Map, Continued

### Editing the Local I/O Map

Step	Action
3	<p>Assign the appropriate state RAM reference(s) to the unit.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> In the screen below, one 3x register (300001) has been assigned for the input points and one 4x register (400001) has been assigned for the output points:</p> 
4	Press <Esc> to return to the Configuration Overview editor.

*Continued on next page*

## Accessing and Editing the I/O Map, Continued

### Local I/O Only

This screen is always used to I/O Map the local I/O base only. No other I/O base units can be I/O Mapped on this screen.

If you attempt to select a second Momentum I/O base in this screen, the following error message appears:

```

Utility          ClrDrop  HoldTme        Drop    QUANTUM        Quit
F1-----test-----F3-----F4-----F5-----F6-----F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-----F9-----
                                MOMENTUM
Type: MOMENTUM IO                      Drop: 1  Available: 454
Number of Inputs : 16                    Number of Outputs : 16
-----
M1 BASE  Module  Input Ref  Output Ref  Description
      170 ADM 370 10 300001-300001 400001-400001 16in+8out 24vdc 2A

```

System Message

Maximum number of modules for this type exceeded

### I/O Bus: A Special Case

If you are I/O Mapping a Processor Adapter which supports I/OBus communication stations, you will need to go to a separate I/O Map screen for Drop 2. That process is described in *I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Modsoft* on page 223 .



---

# I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Modsoft

# 9

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

This chapter describes how to I/O Map an I/OBus network using Modsoft 2.6.



**Note:** Modsoft 2.6 does not support the 171 CCC 960 20 Processor Adapter. This Processor Adapter must be configured with Concept.

---

### Topics

This chapter contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Supporting an I/O Map for an I/OBus Network	224
Accessing an I/O Map Screen for an I/OBus Network	226
Editing the I/OBus I/O Map	228

## Supporting an I/O Map for an I/OBus Network

---

### Introduction

The 171 CCS 760 00 and 171 CCC 760 10 Processor Adapters have an I/OBus communication port that enables them to control and communicate with network slave I/O.

If you are using I/OBus to control network I/O, you need to write an I/O Map in your configuration. This section describes the configuration parameters required to support an I/O Map for I/OBus.

---

### I/O Map Reserved Words

By default, 512 words are reserved for I/O Mapping. This may or may not be the appropriate memory allocation to support your I/OBus network. A rule of thumb for roughly estimating the number of words required for I/O Mapping is:

- 16 words for overhead
- 10 words/module on the network (including both the local and the network I/O)

The idea behind adjusting the memory size is to allow you to completely I/O Map your network while preserving as much user memory as possible for your application program.

---

### Required Settings

Be sure that the following parameters are set on the Configuration Overview screen:

Parameter	Setting
Processor type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● 12.0 for a 171 CCS 760 00 Processor Adapter</li><li>● 18.0 for a 171 CCC 760 10 Processor Adapter</li></ul>
Number of segments	2
I/O Map reserved words	Enough to support your I/O map

---

*Continued on next page*

## Supporting an I/O Map for an I/OBus Network, Continued

---

### **Next Step**

Once you are sure that your Configuration Overview parameters are set properly, you can access a second I/O Map screen for the I/OBus network.

---

## Accessing an I/O Map Screen for an I/OBus Network

**Overview** This section describes how to access an I/O Map screen for an I/OBus network.

**Procedure** To access the I/O Map screen for your I/OBus network, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Configuration Overview screen, move the cursor onto the <b>IOMap</b> command on the top menu and push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Type: MOMENTUM I/O screen for the local I/O base appears.</p>  <pre> Utility          ClrDrop          Drop          Quit F1              F2              F3              F4              F5              F6              F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9 ----- Type: MOMENTUM IO          Drop: 1 Available: 239 Number of Inputs : 16          Number of Outputs : 16 ----- M1 BASE  Module  Input Ref  Output Ref  Description       170 ADM 690 50  300001-300001  400001-400001  10in+8out 120vac                     </pre>

*Continued on next page*

## Accessing an I/O Map Screen for an I/OBus Network, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Select <b>Drop</b> from the top menu bar of this I/O Map screen.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A pulldown menu appears.</p> 
3	<p>Select <b>Add Drop</b> (or <b>Next Drop</b> if you have already established the drop) from the pull-down menu, then push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A new I/O Map screen appears labeled Type: IOBUS. You are now ready to start I/O Mapping the I/OBus network.</p> 

### Next Step

Editing the I/OBus I/O Map.

## Editing the I/OBus I/O Map

### Overview

The maximum number of modules which can be I/O Mapped on the I/OBus network depends on your Processor Adapter:

Processor Adapter	Max. Modules	Max. I/O Bits
171 CCS 760 00	128	2048
171 CCC 760 10	256	4096

You may use up to 16 IOBUS screens to map your I/OBus network. Each page allows you to enter up to 16 I/O base and/or InterBus I/O modules.

The first column on the screen tells you which page you are on.

### Procedure

To enter I/O bases or Interbus I/O modules in the I/OBus I/O Map, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																				
1	<p>Place the cursor in the Module column in row 1 (for NODE 01) and push the &lt;F8&gt; key OR &lt;Shift&gt; &lt;?&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A list of I/O names appears, as shown below. This list includes model numbers for the available Momentum I/O bases and Terminal Block I/O modules. It also includes a series of InterBus Module Identifier codes (see list at the end of this section).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Typ</th> <th>Use</th> <th>PAGE NO</th> <th>Module Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 AAI 030 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 AAI 140 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 AAI 520 40</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 AAO 120 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 AAO 921 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADI 340 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADI 350 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADI 540 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADI 740 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADM 350 1x</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADM 370 10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADM 390 10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADM 390 30</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADM 690 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADO 340 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADO 350 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>14</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADO 530 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>15</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADO 540 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>16</td> <td>1</td> <td>170 ADO 730 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 ADO 740 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 AEC 920 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 ANM 090 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BAI 036 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BAM 096 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BAO 126 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDI 346 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDI 356 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDI 546 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDI 746 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDM 346 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDM 346 30</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDO 346 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDO 356 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BDO 946 50</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>170 BMO 671 00</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0101_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0102_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0103_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0201_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0202_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0203_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0231_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0232_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0233_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0301_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0302_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0303_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0331_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0332_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0333_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0401_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0402_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0403_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0431_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0432_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0433_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0501_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0502_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0503_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0531_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0532_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0533_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_0633_IOBUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>IBS_1233_IOBUS</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Typ	Use	PAGE NO	Module Name	1	0	1	170 AAI 030 00	1	0	1	170 AAI 140 00	1	0	1	170 AAI 520 40	1	0	1	170 AAO 120 00	1	0	1	170 AAO 921 00	1	0	1	170 ADI 340 00	1	0	1	170 ADI 350 00	1	0	1	170 ADI 540 50	1	0	1	170 ADI 740 50	1	0	1	170 ADM 350 1x	1	0	1	170 ADM 370 10	1	0	1	170 ADM 390 10	1	0	1	170 ADM 390 30	1	1	1	170 ADM 690 50	1	1	1	170 ADO 340 00	1	1	1	170 ADO 350 00	1	14	1	170 ADO 530 50	1	15	1	170 ADO 540 50	1	16	1	170 ADO 730 50				170 ADO 740 50				170 AEC 920 00				170 ANM 090 00				170 BAI 036 00				170 BAM 096 00				170 BAO 126 00				170 BDI 346 00				170 BDI 356 00				170 BDI 546 50				170 BDI 746 50				170 BDM 346 00				170 BDM 346 30				170 BDO 346 00				170 BDO 356 00				170 BDO 946 50				170 BMO 671 00				IBS_0101_IOBUS				IBS_0102_IOBUS				IBS_0103_IOBUS				IBS_0201_IOBUS				IBS_0202_IOBUS				IBS_0203_IOBUS				IBS_0231_IOBUS				IBS_0232_IOBUS				IBS_0233_IOBUS				IBS_0301_IOBUS				IBS_0302_IOBUS				IBS_0303_IOBUS				IBS_0331_IOBUS				IBS_0332_IOBUS				IBS_0333_IOBUS				IBS_0401_IOBUS				IBS_0402_IOBUS				IBS_0403_IOBUS				IBS_0431_IOBUS				IBS_0432_IOBUS				IBS_0433_IOBUS				IBS_0501_IOBUS				IBS_0502_IOBUS				IBS_0503_IOBUS				IBS_0531_IOBUS				IBS_0532_IOBUS				IBS_0533_IOBUS				IBS_0633_IOBUS				IBS_1233_IOBUS
Typ	Use	PAGE NO	Module Name																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 AAI 030 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 AAI 140 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 AAI 520 40																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 AAO 120 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 AAO 921 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 ADI 340 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 ADI 350 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 ADI 540 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 ADI 740 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 ADM 350 1x																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 ADM 370 10																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 ADM 390 10																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	0	1	170 ADM 390 30																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	1	1	170 ADM 690 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	1	1	170 ADO 340 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	1	1	170 ADO 350 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	14	1	170 ADO 530 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	15	1	170 ADO 540 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	16	1	170 ADO 730 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 ADO 740 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 AEC 920 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 ANM 090 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BAI 036 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BAM 096 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BAO 126 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDI 346 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDI 356 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDI 546 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDI 746 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDM 346 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDM 346 30																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDO 346 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDO 356 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BDO 946 50																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			170 BMO 671 00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0101_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0102_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0103_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0201_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0202_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0203_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0231_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0232_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0233_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0301_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0302_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0303_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0331_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0332_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0333_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0401_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0402_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0403_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0431_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0432_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0433_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0501_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0502_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0503_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0531_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0532_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0533_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_0633_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
			IBS_1233_IOBUS																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		

Continued on next page

## Editing the I/OBus I/O Map, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Move the cursor onto the desired model number and push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The module type and its description are displayed on the I/O Map screen. The cursor is positioned so that you can assign the appropriate state RAM reference(s) to the unit.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If you select a 170 ADI 350 00 32-point input base, the screen will look like this:</p> <pre> F1-----F2-----F3-----F4-----F5-----F6-----F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9----- Type: IOBUS                                Drop: 1 Available: 233 Used IO Points : 0 of 2048 ----- PAGE NODE  Module      Input Ref      Output Ref      Description 1  01  170 ADI 350 00  [ ]          [ ]          32 dg 24vdc inp 1  02 1  03 1  04 1  05 1  06 1  07 1  08 1  09 1  10 1  11 1  12 1  13 1  14 1  15 1  16 </pre>
3	<p>Enter the desired reference number—in this case a 3x register (300020), which will be the first of two contiguous input registers for the 32-bit input base. The second register is automatically assigned.</p>
4	<p>Move the cursor to the Module column opposite NODE 02 and push &lt;Shift&gt; &lt;?&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The base/module selection popup appears again over the I/O Map screen.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Editing the I/OBus I/O Map, Continued

**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
5	<p>Continue to select and map modules one after the other. You must enter the modules in contiguous node slots on the screen, e.g. you cannot enter a module in slot 7 if you have not filled slot 6.</p> <pre> Utility          CtrDrop          Drop          Insert          Quit F1              F2              F3              F4              F5              F6              F7 Lev 8 F8 OFF F9 ----- Type: IOBUS MOMENTUM Drop: 1 Available: 196 Used IO Points : 160 of 2048 ----- PAGE NODE  Module  Input Ref  Output Ref  Description 1  01 170 ADI 350 00 300010-300011 32 dg 24vdc inp 1  02 170 ADI 340 00 300012-300012 16 dg 24vdc inp 1  03 170 AMM 090 00 300013-300017 400010-400014 4i/2o anl 4i/2o dg 1  04 170 ADO 540 50 400015-400015 16 dg 115vac out 1  05 170 ADM 690 50 300018-300018 400016-400016 10in*8out 115vac 1  06 1  07 1  08 1  09 1  10 1  11 1  12 1  13 1  14 1  15 1  16                     </pre>

*Continued on next page*

## Editing the I/OBus I/O Map, Continued

### Generic InterBus Module Identifier Codes

InterBus device manufacturers embed an identifier code in their network slave modules in conformance with InterBus standards. The code identifies a device by its I/O type but not its specific model or name.

I/OBus recognizes the InterBus identifier codes provided below and allows you to I/O Map devices that use these codes. However, you cannot use the module zoom screens to define the parameters for these InterBus modules.

Identifier Code	I/O Type
0101_I0BUS	One-word discrete output
0102_I0BUS	One-word discrete input
0103_I0BUS	One-word discrete bidirectional
0201_I0BUS	Two-word discrete output
0202_I0BUS	Two-word discrete input
0203_I0BUS	Two-word discrete bidirectional
0231_I0BUS	Two-word analog output
0232_I0BUS	Two-word analog input
0233_I0BUS	Two-word analog bidirectional
0301_I0BUS	Three-word discrete output
0302_I0BUS	Three-word discrete input
0303_I0BUS	Three-word discrete bidirectional
0331_I0BUS	Three-word analog output
0332_I0BUS	Three-word analog input
0333_I0BUS	Three-word analog bidirectional
0401_I0BUS	Four-word discrete output
0402_I0BUS	Four-word discrete input
0403_I0BUS	Four-word discrete bidirectional
0431_I0BUS	Four-word analog output
0432_I0BUS	Four-word analog input
0433_I0BUS	Four-word analog bidirectional

*Continued on next page*

## Editing the I/OBus I/O Map, Continued

---

### Generic InterBus Module Identifier Codes, Continued

Identifier Code	I/O Type
0501_IIOBUS	Five-word discrete output
0502_IIOBUS	Five-word discrete input
0503_IIOBUS	Five-word discrete bidirectional
0531_IIOBUS	Five-word analog output
0532_IIOBUS	Five-word analog input
0533_IIOBUS	Five-word analog bidirectional
0633_IIOBUS	Eight-word analog bidirectional
1233_IIOBUS	Sixteen-word analog bidirectional

---

### Moving Between Pages

To move from one I/O Map page to the another, use the <PageUp> and <PageDown> keys.

- <PageDown> opens the next page—e.g., to move from page 1 to page 2
  - <PageUp> opens the previous page—e.g., to move from page 2 to page 1
-

---

# Configuring a Modbus Plus Network in Modsoft with Peer Cop

# 10

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

Communication transactions over Modbus Plus are defined in Modsoft 2.6 by a configuration tool called Peer Cop. This section uses examples to explain how to use Peer Cop to configure the two types of network architecture:

- An I/O network, where the Peer Cop of the CPU defines all the communication transactions over the full network.
- A supervisory network with two or more CPUs communicating with each other and with additional devices on the network.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

For This Topic...	See Section...	On Page...
Getting Started	1	234
Using Modbus Plus to Handle I/O	2	239
Passing Supervisory Data over Modbus Plus	3	257

## Section 10.1 Getting Started

### Overview

---

#### Purpose

This section explains how to access the Peer Cop Configuration Extension screen and describes the default screen.

---

#### In This Section

This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Accessing the Peer Cop Configuration Extension Screen	235
The Default Peer Cop Screen	237

---

## Accessing the Peer Cop Configuration Extension Screen

---

### Introduction

Before you can access the Peer Cop Configuration Extension screen, you must have specified enough extension memory to support your Peer Cop database.

This section describes how to access the screen and, if necessary, adjust the amount of configuration extension memory.

---

### Accessing the Screen

Starting from the Configuration Overview screen, select **Peer Cop** from the Cfg Ext menu.



**Note:** If **Peer Cop** is disabled in the pulldown list, you will need to specify enough extension memory to support your Peer Cop database before you can continue.

### Adjusting Extension Memory

Extension memory is specified as a number of 16-bit words. That number is entered in the ExtSize field of the Configuration Overview screen. Once an adequate number of words has been specified there, **Peer Cop** will be enabled in the Cfg Ext menu.

---

### Extension Memory Size

The minimum Peer Cop memory requirement is 20 words. The maximum is 1366 words.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Accessing the Peer Cop Configuration Extension Screen, Continued

---

### Estimating How Much Memory to Reserve

Follow these guidelines for estimating the amount of extension memory you will need for your Peer Cop database:

For...	Add...	Up to a maximum of...
Overhead	9 words	--
Global output	5 words	--
Global input	number of words= number of devices x (1 + 2 x number of device subentries)	1088 words
Specific output	2 words for every device entry in Peer Cop	128 words
Specific input	2 words for every device entry in Peer Cop	128 words

---



## The Default Peer Cop Screen, Continued

---

### **Next Step**

No values are set anywhere in the default Peer Cop screen. The following two examples show how to set up Peer Cop to configure different types of Modbus Plus networks.

---

## Section 10.2

# Using Modbus Plus to Handle I/O

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section uses an example to explain how to configure a Modbus Plus network for I/O servicing. In this example, a CPU will control four Momentum I/O modules.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Devices on the Network	240
Defining the Link and Accessing a Node	241
Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information	244
Specifying References for Input Data	248
Accessing the Remaining Devices	252
Completing the I/O Device Configuration in Peer Cop	254

---

## Devices on the Network

---

### Introduction

This section describes the five devices which comprise the sample network and the strategy used to assign addresses.

---

### The Network Devices

The following table lists the Modbus Plus address and components of each TSX Momentum module on the network:

Modbus Plus Address	I/O Base Type	Adapter Type
1	(type not specified)	M1 Processor Adapter (type not specified)  172 PNN 210 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapter
2	170 ADI 340 00 16-point input	170 PNT 110 20 Modbus Plus Communication Adapter
3	170 ADO 340 00 16-point output	170 PNT 110 20 Modbus Plus Communication Adapter
4	170 ADI 350 00 32-point input	170 PNT 110 20 Modbus Plus Communication Adapter
5	170 ADO 350 00 32-point output	170 PNT 110 20 Modbus Plus Communication Adapter

---

### Address Strategy

In this type of architecture, assign the lowest network address (1) to the CPU. When the network initializes, the CPU will be the first device to get the token, and the token rotation table will be built with respect to the controlling device on the network.

---

## Defining the Link and Accessing a Node

---

### Overview

When you reach the default Peer Cop screen, a popup menu asks you to define a link and access a node.

---

### What Is a Link?

The *link* is the Modbus Plus network on which the CPU resides.

The only valid link value for a Momentum M1 CPU is 1. An M1 can function only on one Modbus Plus network—multiple Modbus Plus links are not supported.

---

### What Is a Node?

The *node* is the Modbus Plus address of one of the I/O devices on the network.

A valid node value in our example is any number in the range 2...5. For our example, we will first access the 170 ADI 340 00 16-point input module at Modbus Plus address 2.



**Note:** Address 1, the network address of the CPU itself, is not a valid node to access since the CPU does not need to access itself over the network.

---

*Continued on next page*



## Defining the Link and Accessing a Node, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>Push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Add Node popup disappears, and the Peer Cop summary information values are set as follows:</p> <pre> Utility      GoToNode  AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9 PEER COP Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED         1 OF 1366 WORDS Access to Node :  2 ----- MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT  [ ] - SPECIFIC OUTPUT - GLOBAL INPUT   - ----- TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT   - </pre>

### Next Step

Confirming the Peer Cop summary information.

## Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information

---

### Overview

Once you have defined the link and accessed a node, the Peer Cop summary information values assume default settings. This section describes those settings and how to confirm or change them.

---

### Timeout

The default Timeout is 500 ms .

*Timeout* is the maximum interval that Modbus Plus on a Peer-Copped device will remain healthy without communication activity. If this interval is exceeded, the device will clear its network health bit and will no longer try to communicate via Modbus Plus.

The timeout interval must be in the range 20 ... 2000ms, and it must be specified as an increment of 20ms.

For our example, we will change the timeout value to 240ms.

---

### On Error

The default On Error setting is `CLEAR`.

The *On Error* setting specifies how the Peer-Copped device will treat the last values received before a timeout, once Modbus Plus communications have been restored.

One of two settings may be used—`CLEAR` or `HOLD`. `CLEAR` sets all the previously received values to 0, and `HOLD` retains the previous values.

For our example, we will change the the setting to `HOLD`.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information, Continued

### Procedure

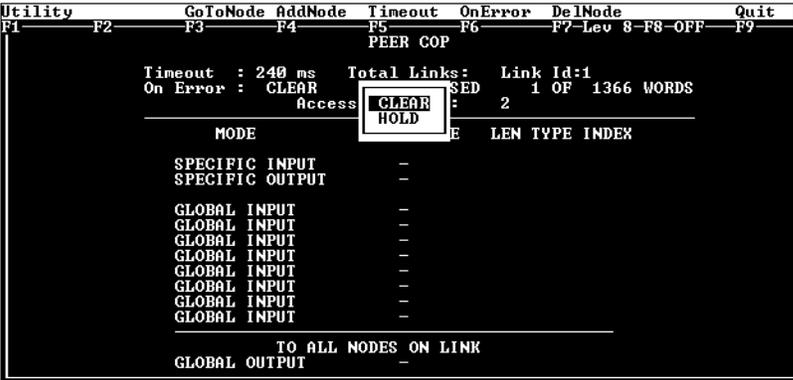
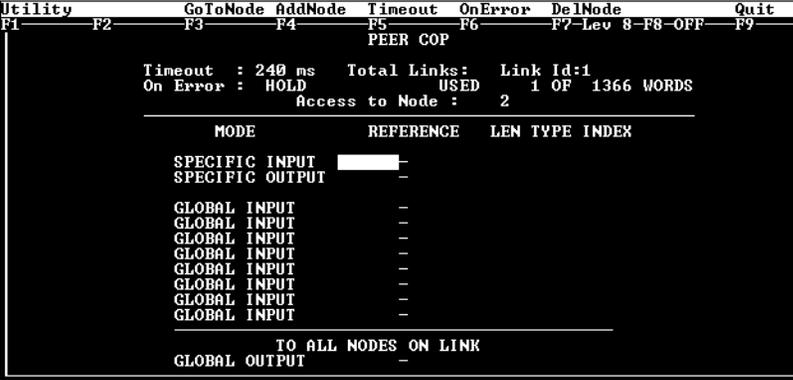
Follow the steps in the table below to change the Peer Cop summary information.

Step	Action
1	Push <Tab> to move the cursor to the menu bar at the top of the Peer Cop screen.
2	Move the cursor onto the <b>Timeout</b> command. Push <Enter>. <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves into the Timeout field in the Peer Cop summary information region, and the default value, 500, is cleared.</p> <pre> Utility      GoToNode AddNode Timeout OnError DelNode      Quit F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8 F8-OFF F9 ----- PEER COP  Timeout : <input type="text"/> ms      Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR          USED      1 OF 1366 WORDS Access to Node : 2  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX ----- SPECIFIC INPUT          - SPECIFIC OUTPUT          -  GLOBAL INPUT          - GLOBAL INPUT          - GLOBAL INPUT          - GLOBAL INPUT          - GLOBAL INPUT          - GLOBAL INPUT          - GLOBAL INPUT          - GLOBAL INPUT          -            TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT          - </pre>
3	Type the number <b>240</b> , then push <Enter>.

*Continued on next page*

## Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information, Continued

Procedure,  
Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>Now select <b>On Error</b> from the menu bar.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves into the On Error field in the Peer Cop summary information region, and a popup menu appears with two choices listed – <b>CLEAR</b> and <b>HOLD</b>.</p>  <pre> Utility      GoToNode  AddNode   Timeout   OnError   DelNode   Quit F1          F2        F3        F4        F5        F6        F7 Lev 8 F8 OFF F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:   Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   Access        : SED      1 OF 1366 WORDS                 : CLEAR                 : HOLD  MODE SPECIFIC INPUT    - SPECIFIC OUTPUT   -  GLOBAL INPUT      - GLOBAL INPUT      - GLOBAL INPUT      - GLOBAL INPUT      - GLOBAL INPUT      - GLOBAL INPUT      - GLOBAL INPUT      -  TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT     -                     </pre>
5	<p>Move the cursor onto <b>HOLD</b> and push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The On Error value in the Peer Cop summary information region is set to <b>HOLD</b>. Your Peer Cop screen should now look like this:</p>  <pre> Utility      GoToNode  AddNode   Timeout   OnError   DelNode   Quit F1          F2        F3        F4        F5        F6        F7 Lev 8 F8 OFF F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:   Link Id:1 On Error : HOLD   Access to Node : USED      1 OF 1366 WORDS                 : 2  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT  - SPECIFIC OUTPUT -  GLOBAL INPUT    - GLOBAL INPUT    - GLOBAL INPUT    - GLOBAL INPUT    - GLOBAL INPUT    - GLOBAL INPUT    - GLOBAL INPUT    -  TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT   -                     </pre>

Continued on next page

## Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information, Continued

---

**Next Step**      Specifying references for input data.

---

## Specifying References for Input Data

---

### Introduction

The Peer Cop screen is now set to access the device at Modbus Plus address 2, which for this example is a 170 ADI 340 00 16-point input module.

This section explains how to specify the reference for input data from this module.

---

### Device Requirements

When you use Peer Cop to handle a Modbus Plus I/O architecture, you need to be aware of the type of I/O you are configuring at each network address. Peer Cop does not know that the device at address 2 is a discrete 16-point input module.

You need to know that a specific input reference with a length of one word (16 bits) is required to handle this module.

We will assign a 3x register (300016) as a specific input to the CPU. When the the 170 ADI 340 00 sends input data to the CPU, it will be sent to this register.

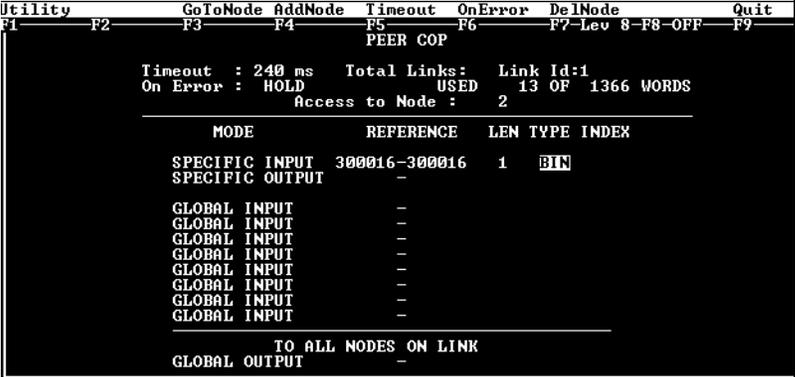
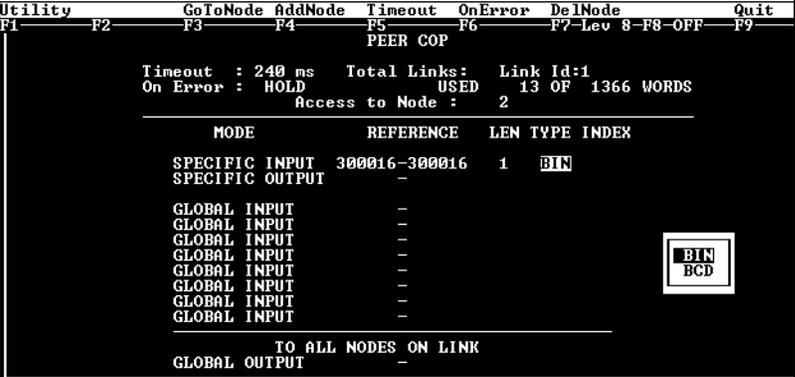
---

*Continued on next page*



## Specifying References for Input Data, Continued

**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>Type the value 1 in the LEN column of the SPECIFIC INPUT field, indicating that the device at address 2 will transmit 1 word of data (or 16 bits). Then push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor is now on BIN (binary) the TYPE column.</p>  <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode          Quit F1              F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : HOLD   USED        13 OF 1366 WORDS                 Access to Node : 2  MODE          REFERENCE      LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT 300016-300016  1  BIN SPECIFIC OUTPUT - GLOBAL INPUT   -                 TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT  -                     </pre>
4	<p>Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A popup menu appears. You can choose between leaving the data type as binary or changing it to BCD.</p>  <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode          Quit F1              F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : HOLD   USED        13 OF 1366 WORDS                 Access to Node : 2  MODE          REFERENCE      LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT 300016-300016  1  BIN SPECIFIC OUTPUT - GLOBAL INPUT   -                 TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT  -                     </pre>

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Input Data, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
5	<p>In this case, we will leave the default BIN setting. Push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Peer Cop screen is now set to handle a 16-point input module at Modbus Plus address 2. The screen should like like this:</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit F1              F2        F3        F4        F5        F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9 ----- PEER COP  Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : HOLD   USED        13 OF 1366 WORDS                 Access to Node : 2  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX ----- SPECIFIC INPUT 300016-300016  1  BIN SPECIFIC OUTPUT -  GLOBAL INPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT   -                  TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT   -           </pre>

### Next Step

Accessing the remaining devices.



## Accessing the Remaining Devices, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>Enter the value 3 in the Node field. Push &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Add Node popup disappears, and the Peer Cop summary information values are set as follows:</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode Timeout OnError DelNode      Quit F1              F2              F3              F4              F5              F6              F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9 PEER COP Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:   Link Id:1 On Error : HOLD   USED          13 OF 1366 WORDS Access to Node : 3  MODE              REFERENCE      LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT   [ ]            - SPECIFIC OUTPUT  - GLOBAL INPUT     - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT    - </pre>

### Next Step

You are now ready to configure Peer Cop for the device at Modbus Plus address 3, which for this example is a 170 ADO 340 00 16-point output module.

## Completing the I/O Device Configuration in Peer Cop

### Introduction

Using the procedures described previously, you can complete the I/O configuration in Peer Cop. This section shows completed Peer Cop screens for this example.

### Register Assignments

For this example, we have made the following register assignments:

MB+ Address	Device Type	Register Assignment
2	16-point discrete input	300016
3	16-point discrete output	400016
4	32-point discrete input	300017 and 300018
5	32-point discrete output	400017 and 400018

### Completed Screen: Node 2

The completed Peer Cop screen for node 2 should look like this:

```

Utility      GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit
F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9
PEER COP

Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:   Link Id:1
On Error : HOLD   USED          13 OF 1366 WORDS
                Access to Node : 2

-----
MODE          REFERENCE    LEN TYPE INDEX
SPECIFIC INPUT 300016-300016  1  BIN
SPECIFIC OUTPUT [REDACTED] -
GLOBAL INPUT   -
-----
                TO ALL NODES ON LINK
GLOBAL OUTPUT  -
    
```

*Continued on next page*

## Completing the I/O Device Configuration in Peer Cop, Continued

### Completed Screen: Node 3

The completed Peer Cop screen for node 3 should look like this:

```

Utility      GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit
F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9
PEER COP

Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:   Link Id:1
On Error : HOLD   USED         17 OF 1366 WORDS
                Access to Node :   3

MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX
SPECIFIC INPUT      -
SPECIFIC OUTPUT 400016-400016  1  BIN
GLOBAL INPUT      -
TO ALL NODES ON LINK
GLOBAL OUTPUT      -

```

### Completed Screen: Node 4

The completed Peer Cop screen for node 4 should look like this:

```

Utility      GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit
F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9
PEER COP

Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:   Link Id:1
On Error : HOLD   USED         19 OF 1366 WORDS
                Access to Node :   4

MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX
SPECIFIC INPUT  300017-300018  2  BIN
SPECIFIC OUTPUT      -
GLOBAL INPUT      -
TO ALL NODES ON LINK
GLOBAL OUTPUT      -

```



**Note:** The lengths (LEN) for the 32-bit I/O devices at addresses 4 and 5 need to be specified as 2 words (32 bits).

*Continued on next page*

## Completing the I/O Device Configuration in Peer Cop, Continued

### Completed Screen: Node 5

The completed Peer Cop screen for node 5 should look like this:

```

Utility      GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit
F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9
PEER COP

Timeout : 240 ms   Total Links:   Link Id:1
On Error : HOLD   USED         21 OF 1366 WORDS
                Access to Node : 5

-----
MODE          REFERENCE    LEN TYPE INDEX
SPECIFIC INPUT      -
SPECIFIC OUTPUT 400017-400018  2  BIN
GLOBAL INPUT        -
                TO ALL NODES ON LINK
GLOBAL OUTPUT      -
    
```



**Note:** The lengths (LEN) for the 32-bit I/O devices at addresses 4 and 5 need to be specified as 2 words (32 bits).

## Section 10.3

# Passing Supervisory Data over Modbus Plus

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This Peer Cop example deals with a network where three CPUs communicate over Modbus Plus. Each device needs its own Peer Cop configuration.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

<b>For This Topic...</b>	<b>See Page...</b>
Devices on the Network	258
Configuring a Node to Exchange Data	259
Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information	262
Specifying References for Input and Output Data	263
Defining the References for the Next Node	268
Defining References for the Supervisory Computer	273
Completing the Configuration	278

---

## Devices on the Network

---

### Introduction

This section describes the three CPUs which exchange data over the sample Modbus Plus network and the strategy used to assign node addresses.

---

### Devices

The three CPUs and their functions are described in the following table:

MB+ Address	CPU	Function
1	Pentium supervisory computer with an AT984 host-based PLC card	Receives specific input data and sends global outputs
2	171 CCS 760 00 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter with 172 PNN 210 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapter	Controls I/OBus network and exchanges data with AT984 supervisor
3	171 CCS 760 00 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter with 172 PNN 210 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapter	Controls I/OBus network and exchanges data with AT984 supervisor

---

### Address Strategy

In this type of architecture, assign the lowest network address (1) to the supervisory computer. When the network initializes, the supervisor will be the first device to get the token, and the token rotation table will be built with respect to the supervising device.

---

## Configuring a Node to Exchange Data

---

**Getting Started** To Peer Cop this sample configuration, each CPU must be separately programmed to communicate with the others over Modbus Plus. Begin by connecting your programming panel to the 171 CCS 760 00 TSX Momentum M1 device at Modbus Plus address 2. Access the Peer Cop with your Modsoft 2.6 software.

When you reach the default Peer Cop screen, you need to initialize the summary information region. To do this, define a link value and a node value in the Add Node popup.

---

**What Is a Link?** The *link* is the Modbus Plus network on which the CPU resides.

The only valid link value for a Momentum M1 CPU is 1. An M1 can function only on one Modbus Plus network—multiple Modbus Plus links are not supported.

---

**What Is a Node?** The *node* is the Modbus Plus address of one of the I/O devices on the network.

For our example, we will first access the AT984 supervisory PLC at Modbus Plus address 1.

---

*Continued on next page*

## Configuring a Node to Exchange Data, Continued

### Procedure

Follow the steps in the table below to define the link and access a node.

Step	Action
1	<p>With the cursor flashing in the Link value field of the Add Node popup, make sure that the Link value in the popup is 1. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Link value is set to 1, and the cursor moves to the Node value field of the Add Node popup.</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode Timeout OnError          Quit F1              F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8 F8-OFF F9 PEER COP  Timeout :      ms   Total Links:  Link Id: On Error :      USED          1 OF      WORDS       Access to Node :        MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT      - SPECIFIC OUTPUT     - GLOBAL INPUT        -       Add Node       Link          1       Node          1       TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT      -                     </pre>

*Continued on next page*

## Configuring a Node to Exchange Data, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>If the value in the Node field is 1, as in our example, press &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p>Otherwise, enter the value 1 in the Node field to indicate that you will access the CPU at address 1. Then press &lt;Enter&gt;.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Add Node popup disappears, and the Peer Cop summary information values are set as follows:</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode Timeout OnError DelNode      Quit F1              F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8 F8-OFF F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED      1 OF 1366 WORDS                     Access to Node : 1  MODE              REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT   [ ]        - SPECIFIC OUTPUT GLOBAL INPUT     - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT    - </pre>

### Next Step

Confirming the Peer Cop summary information.

## Confirming the Peer Cop Summary Information

---

**Overview** Once you have defined the link and accessed a node, the Peer Cop summary information values assume default settings. This section describes those settings.

---

**Timeout** The default Timeout is 500 ms .

*Timeout* is the maximum interval that Modbus Plus on a Peer-Copped device will remain healthy without communication activity. If this interval is exceeded, the device will clear its network health bit and will no longer try to communicate via Modbus Plus.

The timeout interval must be in the range 20 ... 2000 ms, and it must be specified as an increment of 20 ms.

For our example, we will use the default setting.

---

**On Error** The default On Error setting is CLEAR.

The *On Error* setting specifies how the Peer-Copped device will treat the last values received before a timeout, once Modbus Plus communications have been restored.

One of two settings may be used—CLEAR or HOLD. CLEAR sets all the previously received values to 0, and HOLD retains the previous values.

For our example, we will use the default setting.

---

**Next Step** Specifying references for input and output data.

---





## Specifying References for Input and Output Data, Continued

### Defining the Global Inputs

Now the M1 needs to be Peer Copped to receive five words of global data from the supervisory PLC at Modbus Plus address 1. Follow the steps in the table below to specify the global input references.

Step	Action
1	<p>In the REFERENCE column on the first line of the GLOBAL INPUT field, type the value <b>400001</b>, the first register in which the CPU will store data. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves into the LEN column of the GLOBAL INPUT field.</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit F1              F2        F3        F4        F5        F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED        13 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node : 1  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT      - SPECIFIC OUTPUT 400016-400023  8  BIN GLOBAL INPUT      400001-      ■  BIN GLOBAL INPUT      - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT      - </pre>

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Input and Output Data, Continued

### Defining the Global Inputs, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Type the value <b>5</b> in the LEN column of the GLOBAL INPUT field, indicating that the CPU will receive five words of global data from the supervisory computer. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves into the TYPE column of the GLOBAL INPUT field.</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode  AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode          Quit F1-----F2-----F3-----F4-----F5-----F6-----F7-Lev 8 F8-OFF  F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED      18 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node :  1  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT          - SPECIFIC OUTPUT 400016-400023  8  BIN GLOBAL INPUT    400001-400005  5  BIN GLOBAL INPUT          - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT          -                     </pre>
3	<p>The default data format for these words is binary (BIN). This is the desired type for our example, so push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> twice.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves into the INDEX column of the GLOBAL INPUT field.</p>

*Continued on next page*





## Defining the References for the Next Node, Continued

### Defining Specific Outputs, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Type the value <b>16</b> in the LEN column of the SPECIFIC OUTPUT field. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode  AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode          Quit F1              F2        F3        F4        F5        F6              F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED         13 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node :  1  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT      - SPECIFIC OUTPUT 400024-400039 16 BIN GLOBAL INPUT      -  TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT      - </pre>
3	<p>With the TYPE column of the SPECIFIC OUTPUT field set to BIN, push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> twice.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Peer Cop screen should like this:</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode  AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode          Quit F1              F2        F3        F4        F5        F6              F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED         13 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node :  1  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT      - SPECIFIC OUTPUT 400024-400039 16 BIN GLOBAL INPUT      -  TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT      - </pre>

*Continued on next page*



## Defining the References for the Next Node, Continued

### Defining Global Inputs, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Type the value <b>7</b> in the LEN column of the GLOBAL INPUT field to indicate that seven words will be accepted. Then push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The remaining reference field is filled automatically and the cursor moves to the TYPE column.</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode          Quit F1              F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9 ----- PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED        18 OF 2000 WORDS                 Access to Node : 1  ----- MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX ----- SPECIFIC INPUT      - SPECIFIC OUTPUT 400024-400039  16 BIN GLOBAL INPUT      400001-400007  7  BIN GLOBAL INPUT      - -----                 TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT      - </pre>
3	<p>With the TYPE column of the SPECIFIC OUTPUT field set to BIN, push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> twice.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Defining the References for the Next Node, Continued

### Defining Global Inputs, Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>Type the value <b>4</b> in the INDEX column of the GLOBAL INPUT field, indicating that the M1 CPU at Modbus Plus address 3 will receive the seven words of global data starting with word 4.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Peer Cop screen is now set to send 16 words of specific output to the supervisor at Modbus Plus address 1 and to receive seven words of global data from the supervisor. The screen should like this:</p> <pre> Utility      GoToNode  AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit F1          F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED        18 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node : 1  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT      - SPECIFIC OUTPUT 400024-400039 16  BIN GLOBAL INPUT      400001-400007 7  BIN  4 GLOBAL INPUT      - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT      -                     </pre>

### Next Step

Defining references for the supervisory computer.

## Defining References for the Supervisory Computer

---

### Overview

At this point, we will attach the Modsoft 2.6 programming panel to the AT984 supervisory PLC at Modbus Plus address 1 and set up two Peer Cop screens to handle the M1 CPUs at addresses 2 and 3.

We know that the M1 at Modbus Plus address 2 is sending eight words of specific output to the supervisor and that the M1 at Modbus Plus address 3 is sending 16 words of specific output to the supervisor. The supervisor will receive this data as specific inputs.

We also know that the supervisor is sending 10 words of global data, parts of which will be received by both of the M1 CPUs.

---

### Accessing Node 2

Make sure the Link setting is 1 and the Node setting is 2, indicating that the supervisory computer will exchange data with the CPU at address 2.

---

*Continued on next page*



## Defining References for the Supervisory Computer, Continued

### Specifying References for Node 2, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Type the value <b>8</b> in the LEN column of the SPECIFIC INPUT field to indicate the number of registers that will be received. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The REFERENCE field is completed automatically and the cursor moves to the TYPE column.</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode          Quit F1              F2              F3              F4              F5              F6              F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF  F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:   Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED          13 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node : 2  MODE          REFERENCE  LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT 400001-400008 8  BIN SPECIFIC OUTPUT - GLOBAL INPUT   - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT  - </pre>
3	<p>With the TYPE column of the SPECIFIC INPUT field set to BIN, push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> twice.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Defining References for the Supervisory Computer, Continued

### Specifying References for Node 2, Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>In the REFERENCE column of the GLOBAL OUTPUT field (at the bottom of the screen), type <b>400033</b>, the first register which will be sent. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The cursor moves to the LEN column.</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode Timeout OnError DelNode      Quit F1              F2              F3              F4              F5              F6              F7 Lev 8 F8 OFF F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED      13 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node : 2  MODE              REFERENCE      LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT    400001-400008  8  BIN SPECIFIC OUTPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT      - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT     400033-      BIN                     </pre>
5	<p>Type the value <b>10</b> in the LEN column of the GLOBAL OUTPUT field to indicate the number of registers to be sent. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The REFERENCE field is completed automatically and the cursor moves to the TYPE column.</p> <pre> Utility          GoToNode AddNode Timeout OnError DelNode      Quit F1              F2              F3              F4              F5              F6              F7 Lev 8 F8 OFF F9 PEER COP  Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED      17 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node : 2  MODE              REFERENCE      LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT    400001-400008  8  BIN SPECIFIC OUTPUT   - GLOBAL INPUT      - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT     400033-400042  10 BIN                     </pre>

*Continued on next page*

## Defining References for the Supervisory Computer, Continued

### Specifying References for Node 2, Continued

Step	Action
6	<p>With the TYPE column of the GLOBAL OUTPUT filed set to BIN, push &lt;Enter&gt; twice.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Peer Cop screen should like this:</p> <pre> Utility      GoToNode  AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit F1          F2        F3       F4       F5       F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9 PEER COP Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1 On Error : CLEAR   USED        17 OF 2000 WORDS Access to Node :  2  MODE          REFERENCE    LEN TYPE INDEX SPECIFIC INPUT 400001-400008 8  BIN SPECIFIC OUTPUT - GLOBAL INPUT   - TO ALL NODES ON LINK GLOBAL OUTPUT 400033-400042 10 BIN           </pre>

### Next Step

Complete the configuration by creating a Peer Cop screen from the supervisor that accesses node 3 and defines the references for that node.

## Completing the Configuration

**Overview** To complete the configuration of the supervisory computer at Modbus Plus address 1, create a Peer Cop screen that accesses the CPU at address 3 and defines the references for that CPU.

**Accessing Node 3** Using the AddNode command, create a new Peer Cop screen with a Link setting of 1 and a Node setting of 3.

**Specifying References for Node 3** We know that this M1 CPU sends 16 words of specific output to the supervisor and receive seven words of global data from the supervisor. Follow the steps in the table below to define the registers that the supervisor will transmit to and receive from the M1 CPU at Modbus Plus address 3.

Step	Action
1	In the REFERENCE column of the SPECIFIC INPUT field, type the value <b>400020</b> , the first register which will receive the input. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> .
2	Type the value <b>16</b> in the LEN column of the SPECIFIC INPUT field, indicating the number of registers that will be received. Push <b>&lt;Enter&gt;</b> .
3	The GLOBAL OUTPUT fields should already be complete, since you filled them out for node 2. The completed Peer Cop screen should look like this:

```

Utility          GoToNode AddNode  Timeout  OnError  DelNode      Quit
F1              F2          F3          F4          F5          F6          F7-Lev 8-F8-OFF-F9
PEER COP
Timeout : 500 ms   Total Links:  Link Id:1
On Error : CLEAR   USED         19 OF 2000 WORDS
                Access to Node : 3

MODE            REFERENCE    LEN TYPE INDEX
SPECIFIC INPUT  400020-400035  16  BIN
SPECIFIC OUTPUT -
GLOBAL INPUT   -
                TO ALL NODES ON LINK
GLOBAL OUTPUT  400033-400042  10  BIN
    
```

---

# Saving to Flash in Modsoft

# 11

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

You save data to Flash so that in the event of an unexpected loss of power, the application logic and state RAM values will be preserved.

This section describes how to save the application logic and state RAM values to Flash using Modsoft 2.6.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Preparing to Save to Flash	280
Saving to Flash	281

## Preparing to Save to Flash

---

### Before You Save to Flash

Before you can save to Flash in Modsoft, you need to specify how the controller will react when power is re-established. This section describes three options. The next section describes how to specify an option.

---

### Three Parameters

Modsoft will ask you three questions:

**Q1** Continue power down Run state? Y/N

**Q2** Start PLC after download? Y/N

**Q3** Continue? Y/N

Q1 and Q2 define the state of the controller after power is re-established. Q3 simply initiates a save-to-Flash operation in the controller. Q3 cannot be invoked unless Q1 and Q2 have been answered Y(es) or N(o).

---

### Three Possible States

The following table shows you the three states that you may specify for the controller:

If the Answer Is ...	Then the Controller ...
Q1 = Y	Comes back in the state it was in (Running or Stopped) before power was lost
Q2 = N	
Q1 = N	Comes back Running when power is restored
Q2 = Y	
Q1 = N	Comes back Stopped when power is restored
Q2 = N	

---

## Saving to Flash

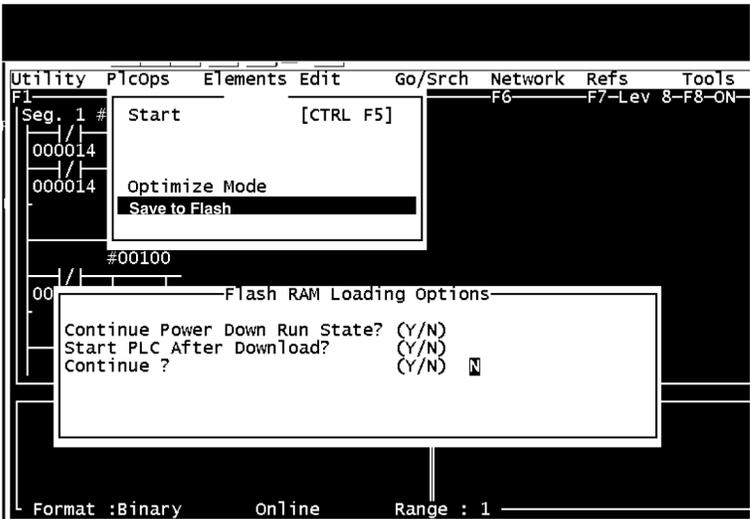
### Conditions for Saving to Flash

In order to save the application program and state RAM values to Flash:

- The Modsoft panel must be Online
- The PLC must be stopped (not solving logic)

### Save-to-Flash Procedure

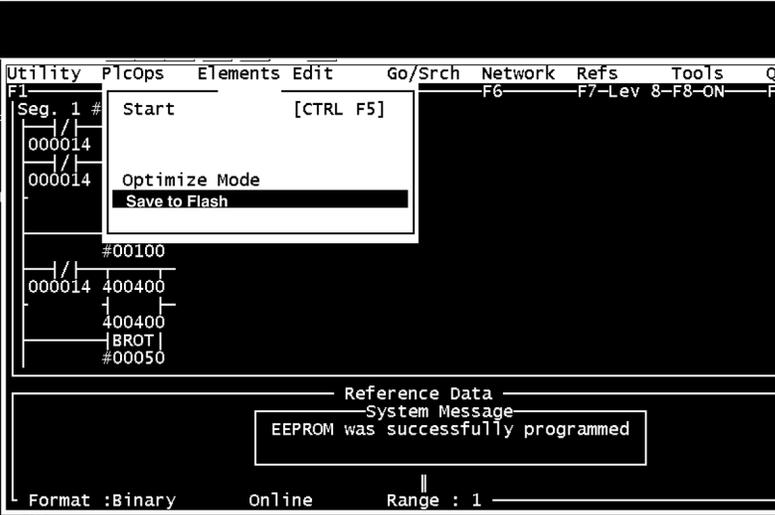
Follow the steps below to save to Flash.

Step	Action
1	With the PLC online, go to the Ladder diagram editor or the Segment Status Display.
2	<p>From the PlcOps pulldown on the top menu, select <b>Save to Flash</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> If the PLC is stopped when you select <b>Save to Flash</b>, the following screen appears:</p> 
3	Answer the first two questions to specify the way you want the PLC to restart after a power-down.

*Continued on next page*

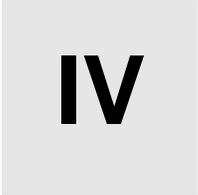
## Saving to Flash, Continued

### Save-to-Flash Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>Type Y in response to question 3.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The PLC will save your application logic and state RAM table to Flash. When the save is completed, the following system message appears:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Modsoft interface with a menu open over the 'Start' button. The menu options are 'Optimize Mode' and 'Save to Flash'. Below the menu, a system message box displays 'EEPROM was successfully programmed'. The status bar at the bottom indicates 'Format : Binary', 'Online', and 'Range : 1'.</p>

---

# Concept



# IV

---

## At a Glance

---

### Purpose

This part describes how to configure an M1 CPU, how to I/O map an I/OBus network, how to configure a Modbus Plus network with Peer Cop and how to save to Flash using Concept 2.1.

---

### In This Part

This part contains the following chapters:

For Information On...	See Chapter...	On Page...
Configuring an M1 CPU with Concept	12	285
I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Concept	13	337
Configuring a Modbus Plus Network in Concept with Peer Cop	14	345
Saving to Flash with Concept	15	375

---



---

# Configuring an M1 CPU with Concept

# 12

---

## At a Glance

**Purpose** This chapter explains how to configure a CPU using Concept 2.2.

**In This Chapter** This chapter contains the following sections:

For This Topic...	See Section...	On Page...
Configuring the Processor Adapter	1	286
Configuring Option Adapter Features	2	304
Modifying Modbus Port Parameters	3	313
Configuring Ethernet Address Parameters and I/O Scanning	4	321
I/O Mapping the Local I/O Points	5	334

---

## Section 12.1

# Configuring the Processor Adapter

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section describes how to configure a TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter using Concept 2.2.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter	287
Default Configuration Parameters	292
Changing the Range of Discrete and Register References	295
Changing the Size of the Full Logic Area	297
Understanding the Number of Segments	298
Changing the Size of the I/O Map	299
Establishing Configuration Extension Memory for Peer Cop	301

---

## Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter

---

### Introduction

This section describes how to select an M1 Processor Adapter for a new project using Concept 2.2.



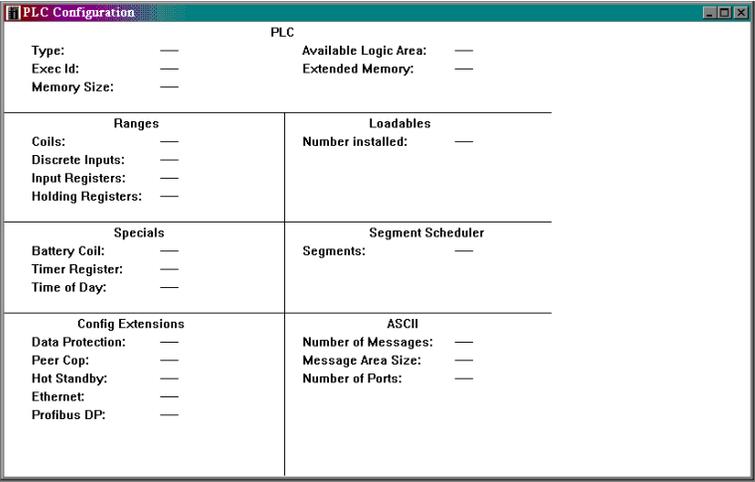
**Note:** For a full description of Concept, refer to the set of manuals shipped with the software.

---

## Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter, Continued

### Procedure

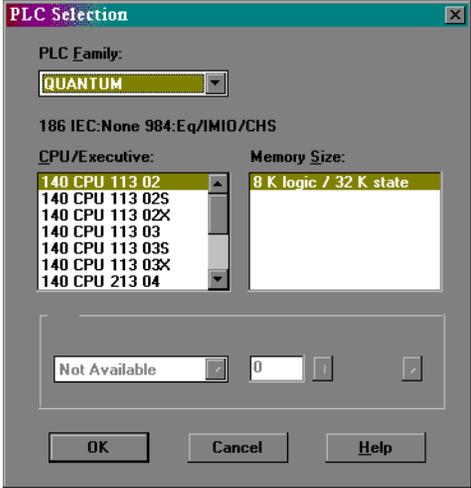
Follow the steps below to select an M1 Processor Adapter for a new project.

Step	Action
1	<p>From the File menu, select <b>New Project</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A new project is opened and the file name [untitled] appears over the menu bar.</p>
2	<p>From the Project menu, select <b>Configurator</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The PLC Configuration screen appears.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter, Continued

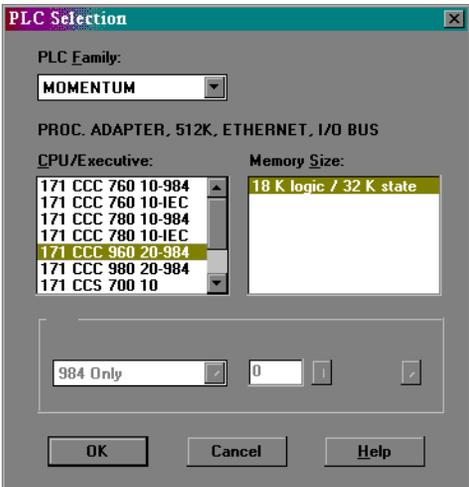
**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>From the Configure menu, select <b>PLC Type</b> OR double-click on the <b>Type</b> field in the dialog box.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The PLC Selection dialog box appears. The default selection is Quantum.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter, Continued

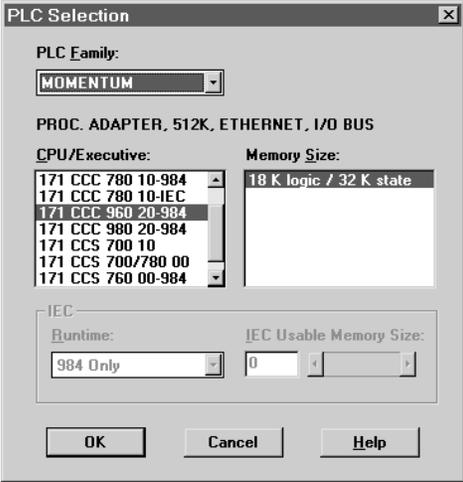
**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>From the PLC Family dropdown menu, select <b>MOMENTUM</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The CPU/Executive menu changes to reflect the choices available for Momentum.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "PLC Selection". It has a "PLC Family:" dropdown menu with "MOMENTUM" selected. Below that, it says "PROC. ADAPTER, 512K, ETHERNET, I/O BUS". There are two columns: "CPU/Executive:" and "Memory Size:". The "CPU/Executive:" list contains: 171 CCC 760 10-984, 171 CCC 760 10-IEC, 171 CCC 780 10-984, 171 CCC 780 10-IEC, 171 CCC 960 20-984 (highlighted), 171 CCC 980 20-984, and 171 CCS 700 10. The "Memory Size:" field shows "18 K logic / 32 K state". At the bottom, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Help".</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Selecting an M1 Processor Adapter, Continued

**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
5	<p>Choose your PLC type from the CPU/Executive menu.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The remaining fields are filled with corresponding values.</p> 
6	<p>Click the &lt;OK&gt; button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> Your PLC type and default configuration parameters are displayed in the PLC Configuration screen.</p>

## Default Configuration Parameters

### Overview

This section describes the default configuration parameters.

### Defaults for a 2.4K Machine

This sample PLC Configuration screen shows the default configuration parameters.

The screenshot shows a window titled "PLC Configuration" with a "PLC" label. The parameters are as follows:

Type:	171 CCS 700 10	Available Logic Area:	1297
Exec Id:	898	Extended Memory:	—
Memory Size:	2.46K		
<b>Ranges</b>		<b>Loadables</b>	
Coils:	000001 - 001536	Number installed:	0
Discrete Inputs:	100001 - 100512		
Input Registers:	300001 - 300048		
Holding Registers:	400001 - 401872		
<b>Specials</b>		<b>Segment Scheduler</b>	
Battery Coil:	—	Segments:	1
Timer Register:	—		
Time of Day:	—		
<b>Config Extensions</b>			
Data Protection:	Disabled		
Peer Cop:	Disabled		
Hot Standby:	Not Applicable		
Ethernet:	Not Applicable		
Profibus DP:	Not Applicable		

*Continued on next page*

## Default Configuration Parameters, Continued

### Defaults for a 12.2K Machine

This sample PLC Configuration screen shows the default configuration parameters.

PLC Configuration		PLC	
Type:	171 CCS 760 00-IEC	Available Logic Area:	11121
Exec Id:	899	Extended Memory:	—
Memory Size:	12.29K		
<b>Ranges</b>		<b>Loadables</b>	
Coils:	000001 - 001536	Number installed:	0
Discrete Inputs:	100001 - 100512		
Input Registers:	300001 - 300048		
Holding Registers:	400001 - 401872		
<b>Specials</b>		<b>Segment Scheduler</b>	
Battery Coil:	—	Segments:	1
Timer Register:	—		
Time of Day:	—		
<b>Config Extensions</b>			
Data Protection:	Disabled		
Peer Cop:	Disabled		
Hot Standby:	Not Applicable		
Ethernet:	Not Applicable		
Profibus DP:	Not Applicable		

*Continued on next page*

## Default Configuration Parameters, Continued

### Defaults for an 18.4K Machine

This sample PLC Configuration screen shows the default configuration parameters.

The screenshot shows a window titled "PLC Configuration" with the following parameters:

PLC			
Type:	171 CCC 960 20-984	Available Logic Area:	17649
Exec Id:	898	Extended Memory:	—
Memory Size:	18.43K		
Ranges		Loadables	
Coils:	000001 - 001536	Number installed:	0
Discrete Inputs:	100001 - 100512		
Input Registers:	300001 - 300048		
Holding Registers:	400001 - 401872		
Specials		Segment Scheduler	
Battery Coil:	—	Segments:	1
Timer Register:	—		
Time of Day:	—		
Config Extensions			
Data Protection:	Disabled		
Peer Cop:	Disabled		
Hot Standby:	Not Applicable		
Ethernet:	0		
Profibus DP:	Not Applicable		

### Default Values

Here are the default parameters:

Parameter	2.4K Machine	12.2K Machine	18.4K Machine
Coils in state RAM	1536 (0x)	1536 (0x)	1536 (0x)
Discrete inputs in state RAM	512 (1x)	512 (1x)	512 (1x)
Input registers in state RAM	48 (3x)	48 (3x)	48 (3x)
Output registers in state RAM	1872 (4x)	1872 (4x)	1872 (4x)
Full logic area (in bytes)	1678	11532	17649
Words of user memory space for the I/O Map	144	144	144
Memory allocated for configuration extension	None	None	None

## Changing the Range of Discrete and Register References

---

### Introduction

This section provides guidelines and a procedure for changing the range of discrete (0x and 1x) and register (3x and 4x) references.

---

### Guidelines

When you change the range of discrete and register references, follow these guidelines:

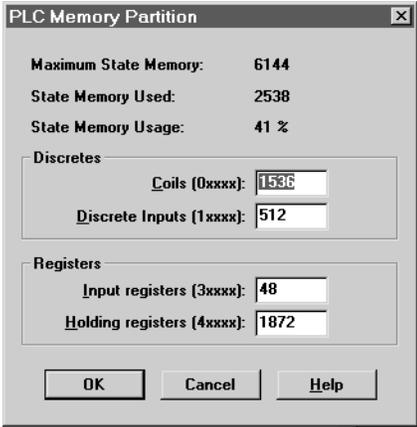
- Adjust the range of discretets in increments of 16. Sixteen discretets consume one word.
  - Adjust the range of registers in increments of 1. Each register consumes one word.
  - The total number of register and discrete references cannot exceed the maximum of state memory displayed at the top of the dialog.
  - A minimum configuration of 16 0x discretets, 16 1x discretets, one 3x register, and one 4x register is required.
- 

*Continued on next page*

## Changing the Range of Discrete and Register References, Continued

### Procedure

Follow the steps below to change the range of discrete and register references, using the PLC Configuration screen:

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Configure menu, select <b>Memory Partitions</b> OR double-click on any field in the Ranges section of the dialog box.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The PLC Memory Partition dialog box appears, showing the maximum memory size and the register allocation of the CPU.</p> 
2	<p>Modify the range of your discrete and register references by changing the value in the variable boxes, in keeping with the guidelines described above.</p>
3	<p>Click the &lt;OK&gt; button.</p>

## Changing the Size of the Full Logic Area

---

### Introduction

The number shown in the Available Logic Area field in the PLC Configuration screen indicates the total amount of memory available for your application logic. You cannot directly enter this field to modify the value. You can, however, change the amount of memory available by manipulating the size of other fields in the PLC Configuration screen.

---

### Example 1

For example, if you reduce the expansion size of the I/O Map, the number in the Available Logic Area field automatically increases. Say you are using a 12.2K machine and you change the size of the I/O Map from 512 to 256, a decrease of 256 words. The Available Logic Area will automatically increase from 1198 to 1454.

---

### Example 2

Similarly, if you allocate some number of words to the Peer Cop expansion size, you will reduce the Available Logic Area by the number of words allocated for Peer Cop.

---

## Understanding the Number of Segments

---

### **Only the First Segment is Solved**

The number of segments specified in the Configuration Overview screen determines the number of I/O Map drops that you will be able to set up for your CPU. When you are using Concept 2.2, the default number of segments is 1 in most CPUs.

This number is adequate for all processor adapters and does not need to be changed. However, you should only use the second segment for I/OBus I/O mapping or other subroutines.

---

---

## Changing the Size of the I/O Map

---

### Introduction

The default size of the I/O Map is 144 words. You may want to adjust this number to provide more support for an I/OBus network or to increase the size of the full logic area.

---

### Processors for I/OBus Networks

With I/OBus, an I/O Map table is used to define the number, location and type of I/O devices on the network bus.

Default	144 words
Minimum	4 words
Maximum	6143 words, or not to exceed the PLC's memory size.

---

### All Other Processors

Other Processor Adapters only use the I/O Map for local I/O. The default of 144 words is more than sufficient for any TSX Momentum I/O base. Depending on the requirements of your I/O base, you may be able to reduce the number of words to the minimum, 4, in order to increase the Available Logic Area.

Default	144 words
Minimum	4 words

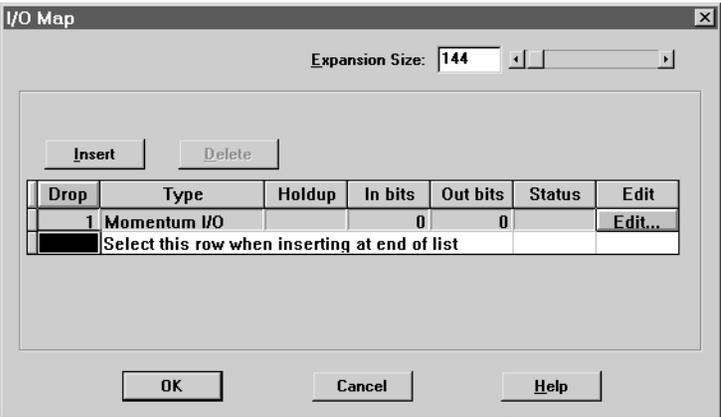
---

*Continued on next page*

## Changing the Size of the I/O Map, Continued

### Procedure

From the PLC Configuration screen, follow the steps below to change the size of the I/O Map:

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Configure menu, select <b>I/O Map</b>.</p> <p>Result: The I/O Map dialog box appears.</p> 
2	<p>Modify the size of the I/O Map by typing a new value in the Expansion Size field OR by adjusting the sliding scale.</p>
3	<p>Click the <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b> button.</p>

## Establishing Configuration Extension Memory for Peer Cop

---

### Introduction

By default, the Peer Cop capability is disabled. If you want to use Peer Cop to handle Modbus Plus communications, you need to enable this capability and adjust the amount of configuration extension memory.

---

### How Much Memory?

The minimum Peer Cop memory requirement is 20 words; the maximum is 1366 words.

Follow these guidelines for estimating the amount of extension memory you will need for your Peer Cop database:

For...	Add...	Up to a maximum of...
Overhead	9 words	--
Global output	5 words	--
Global input	number of words= number of devices x (1 + 2 x number of device subentries)	1088 words
Specific output	2 words for every device entry in Peer Cop	128 words
Specific input	2 words for every device entry in Peer Cop	128 words

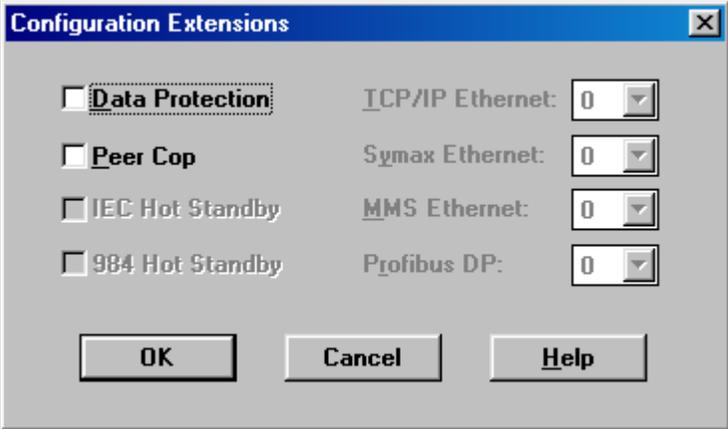
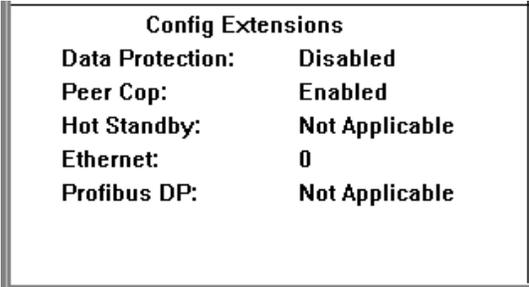
---

*Continued on next page*

## Establishing Configuration Extension Memory for Peer Cop, Continued

**Procedure**

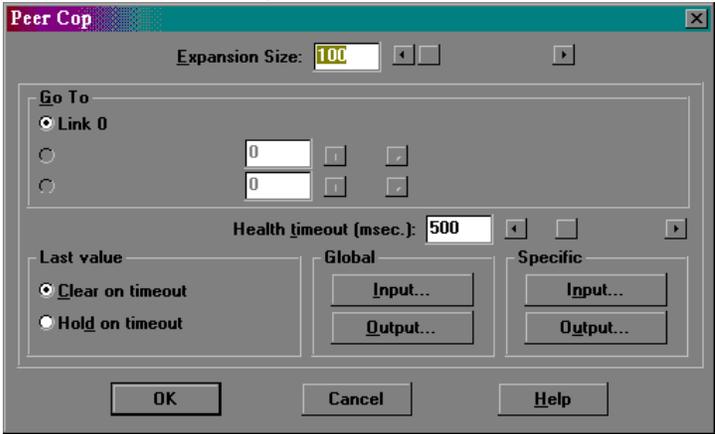
From the PLC Configuration screen, follow the steps below to enable Peer Cop and adjust the amount of Configuration Extension memory:

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Configure menu, select <b>Config extensions</b> OR double-click anywhere in the Config Extensions region of the screen.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Configuration Extension dialog box appears.</p> 
2	<p>Click the check box next to Peer Cop, then click OK.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> Peer Cop status changes from Disabled to Enabled in the PLC Configuration screen.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Establishing Configuration Extension Memory for Peer Cop, Continued

**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>From the Configure menu, select <b>Peer Cop</b>.</p> <p>Result: The Peer Cop dialog box appears.</p> 
4	<p>Modify the amount of configuration extension memory allocated to Peer Cop by typing a new value in the Expansion Size field OR by adjusting the sliding scale next to the field.</p>
5	<p>Click the <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b> button.</p>

## Section 12.2

# Configuring Option Adapter Features

### Overview

---

#### Purpose

This section describes how to implement the battery backup and time-of-day (TOD) clock features of the TSX Momentum Option Adapters using Concept 2.2.

---

#### In This Section

This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil	305
Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock	308
Setting the Time	311
Reading the Time-of-Day Clock	312

---

## Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil

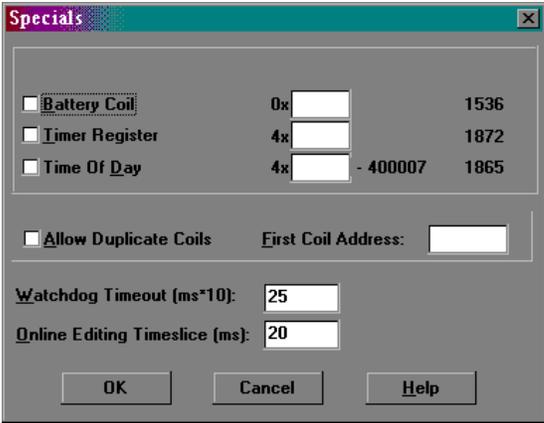
### Introduction

Since the Option Adapter does not have an LED to indicate when the battery is low, we recommend that you reserve a 0x reference to monitor the health of the battery.

This section describes how to reserve and monitor a battery coil, using the Specials dialog box in Concept 2.1.

### Reserving a Battery Coil

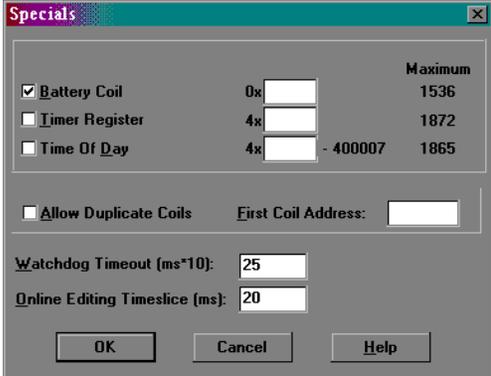
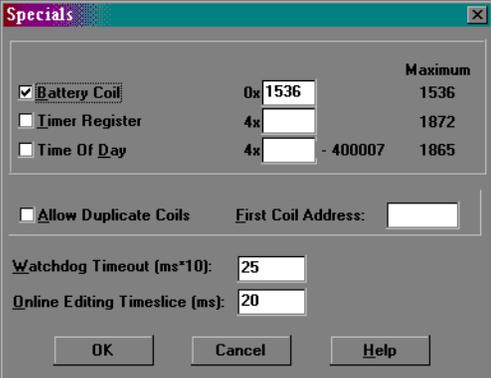
From the PLC Configuration screen, perform the steps in the following table to reserve a battery coil.

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Configure menu, select <b>Specials...</b> OR double-click on any field in the Specials region of the dialog box.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Specials dialog box appears.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil, Continued

### Reserving a Battery Coil, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Click the check box next to Battery Coil.</p> 
3	<p>Type a number from the range of available 0xxxx references in the box marked 0x.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If you have set the range of 0x's at 000001...001536, you might want to enter the reference value of the last coil—1536.</p> 
4	<p>Click the &lt;OK&gt; button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The dialog box closes and the register you have specified is displayed on the PLC Configuration screen.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Reserving and Monitoring a Battery Coil, Continued

---

### Monitoring the Battery Coil

Monitor the battery coil in ladder logic or tie it to a lamp or alarm that will indicate when the battery is low.

---

### Interpreting the Battery Coil

The battery coil will always read either 0 or 1.

- A coil state of 0 indicates that the battery is healthy.
  - A coil state of 1 indicates that the battery should be changed.
-

## Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock

---

### Overview

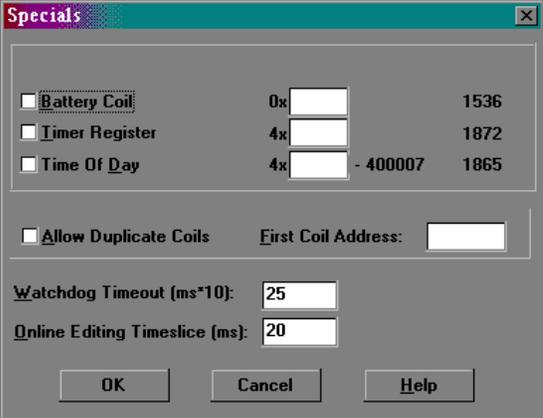
Each Option Adapter has a time-of-day clock. To use this feature, you must reserve a block of eight 4x registers.

This section describes how to reserve those registers, using Concept 2.1.

---

### Reserving Registers for the TOD Clock

To reserve registers for the TOD clock, perform the steps in the following table.

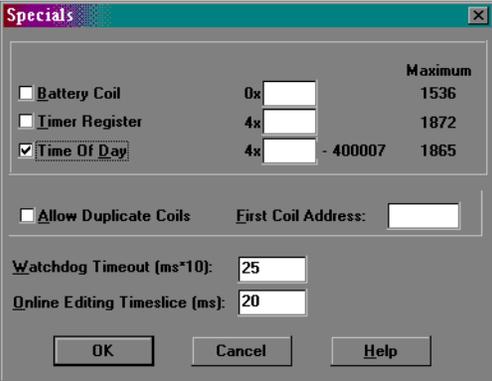
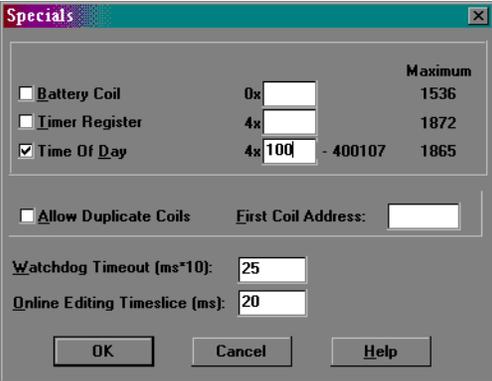
Step	Action
1	<p>From the Configure menu, select <b>Specials...</b> OR double-click on any field in the Specials region of the dialog box.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Specials dialog box appears.</p> 

---

*Continued on next page*

## Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock, Continued

### Reserving Registers for the TOD Clock, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Click the check box next to Time Of Day.</p> 
3	<p>Type a number (the first in a series of eight) from the range of available 4xxxx references in the corresponding field. Observe the maximum register value.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If you want registers 400100 ... 400107 reserved for the TOD clock, type 100.</p> 
4	<p>Click the &lt;OK&gt; button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The registers you have specified are displayed on the PLC Configuration screen.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Setting up the Time-of-Day Clock, Continued

---

### Next Step

Setting the time.



**Note:** You can use Concept's Setting the Time feature or use the following procedure to set the time.

---

## Setting the Time

### Overview

Once you have reserved a block of registers for the time-of-day clock, you have to set the correct time. With Concept, you must go online and set the register bits individually, using the following guidelines for setting the status bits and setting the time bits. The CPU must be running.



**Note:** The time-of-day clock complies with guidelines for the year 2000.

### Setting the Status Bits

The control register (4x) uses its four most significant bits to report status:

Control Register															
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
			1 = error												
		1 = All clock values have been set													
	1 = Clock values are being read														
1 = Clock values are being set															

### Setting the Time Bits

The following table shows how the registers handle time-of-day clock data, where register 4x is the first register in the block reserved for the clock:

Register	Data Content
4x	The control register
4x + 1	Day of the week (Sunday = 1, Monday = 2, etc.)
4x + 2	Month of the year (Jan = 1, Feb = 2, etc.)
4x + 3	Day of the month (1...31)
4x + 4	Year (00...99)
4x + 5	Hour in military time (0...23)
4x + 6	Minute (0...59)
4x + 7	Second (0...59)

## Reading the Time-of-Day Clock

---

**Overview** This section uses an example to describe how to interpret the time-of-day clock registers.

---

**Example** If you reserved registers 400100...400107 as your TOD clock registers, set the time bits, and then read the clock at 9:25:30 on Thursday, July 16, 1998, the registers would display the following values:

Register	Reading	Indication
400100	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	All clock values have been set; clock values are being read
400101	5 (decimal)	Thursday
400102	7 (decimal)	July
400103	16 (decimal)	16
400104	98 (decimal)	1998
400105	9 (decimal)	9 a.m.
40010 6	25 (decimal)	25 minutes
40010 7	30 (decimal)	30 seconds

---

---

## Section 12.3

# Modifying Modbus Port Parameters

### Overview

---

#### Purpose

The communication parameters on the Modbus ports are set at the factory. This section describes how to access the Modbus Port Settings dialog box and edit the default parameters.

---

#### In This Section

This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Accessing the Modbus Port Settings Dialog Box	314
Changing the Baud Rate	315
Changing Mode and Data Bits	316
Stop Bit Should Not Be Changed	317
Changing Parity	317
Changing the Delay	318
Changing the Modbus Address	319
Changing the Protocol on Modbus Port 2	320

---

## Accessing the Modbus Port Settings Dialog Box

---

**Introduction** Modbus port parameters can be modified using the Modbus Port Settings dialog box in Concept 2.2.

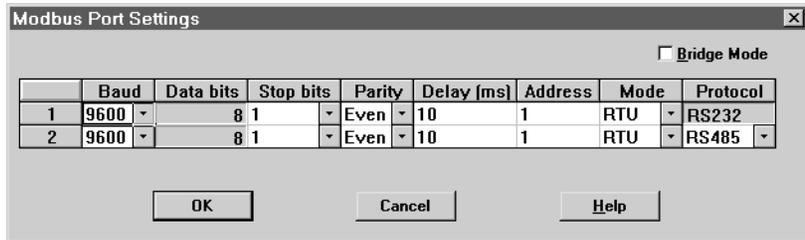
---

**How to Get There** From the Configure menu, select **Modbus port settings...**

---

**Modbus Port Default Settings** If you have not previously modified any port parameters, the following dialog box will appear. The dialog box shows the default parameters for two Modbus ports, 1 and 2, if your system configuration supports two ports.

If you have previously modified any communication port parameters, the new values will appear in the dialog box.



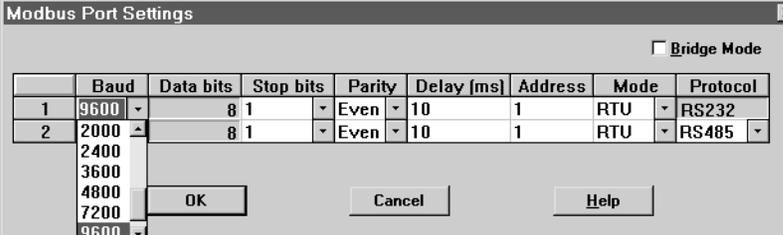
## Changing the Baud Rate

### Overview

Each port can be configured for a baud in the range 50 ... 19,200. Sixteen valid baud rates are user-selectable. The factory-set default is 9600 baud.

### Procedure

To change the baud parameter, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the down arrow under the Baud heading.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A menu appears displaying 16 baud values.</p> 
2	<p>Click on the desired rate.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Modbus Port Settings dialog box is updated with the Baud number you have specified.</p>

## Changing Mode and Data Bits

### Introduction

From the Modbus Port Settings dialog box, each port can be configured to operate in one of two possible modes – RTU or ASCII.

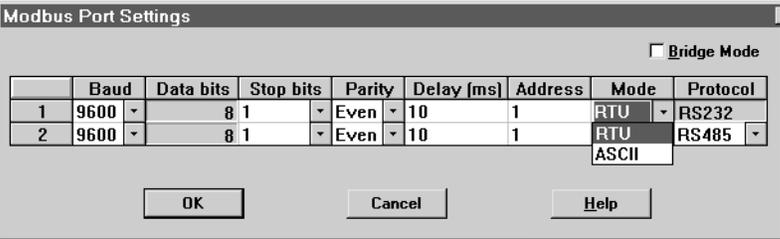
- If the mode is RTU, the number of data bits is always 8.
- If the mode is ASCII, the number of data bits is always 7.



**Note:** The factory-set default is 8-bit RTU.

### Procedure

To change the mode and data bit parameters, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the down arrow under Mode.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A menu appears displaying your two Mode options.</p> 
2	<p>Click on the <b>RTU</b> or <b>ASCII</b> entry.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Ports setting Window is updated with the Mode type you have specified, the corresponding Data Bit value appears.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If you change Modbus Port 1 from RTU mode to ASCII mode, the Data Bit value also automatically changes from 8 to 7.</p>

## Stop Bit Should Not Be Changed

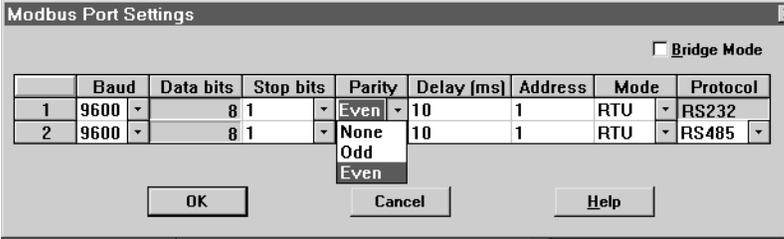
## Changing Parity

### Introduction

From the Modbus Port Setting screen, a port can be configured for even, odd, or no parity checking. The factory-set default is EVEN parity.

### Procedure

To change the parity parameter, perform the steps in the following table:

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the down arrow under the Parity heading.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A menu appears with the three Parity choices.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Modbus Port Settings' dialog box with a 'Bridge Mode' checkbox. Below it is a table with columns: Baud, Data bits, Stop bits, Parity, Delay (ms), Address, Mode, and Protocol. The Parity dropdown menu is open, showing 'None', 'Odd', and 'Even' options. The current selection is 'Even'.</p>
2	<p>Click on the <b>None</b>, <b>Odd</b> or <b>Even</b> entry.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Modbus Port Settings dialog box is updated with the Parity type you have specified.</p>

## Changing the Delay

---

### Overview

The Delay parameter is set to 10 ms and should be left at this value for most applications. Do not change this parameter unless your application demands it.

If you must change this parameter, you may select a value from 10 ... 1000 ms, in 10 ms increments.

---

### Delay Timing

If you use baud rates lower than 4800, adjust the delay timing as indicated in the following table:

Baud Rate	Delay (in Msec)
2400	20
1200	30
600	50
300	100

---

### Procedure

Follow the steps in the table below to change the delay:

Step	Action
1	Click on the Delay parameter for the port.
2	Type a new value in the range 10 ... 1000 ms, using increments of 10 ms.

---

---

## Changing the Modbus Address

---

### Overview

Each port can be assigned a Modbus network address in the range 1 ... 247. That address must be unique with respect to all other device addresses on the same Modbus networks.

Since Modbus port 1 and Modbus port 2 are always on different Modbus networks, they can both be assigned the same address value without conflict. The factory-set default for both ports is address 1.

---

### Procedure

From the Modbus Port Settings dialog box, perform the steps in the following table to change the Modbus Address:

Step	Address
1	Click on the Address field for the appropriate Modbus port.
2	Type a new value in the range 1 ... 247.

Set the Stop Bit at 1.

Bridge mode is not supported.

---

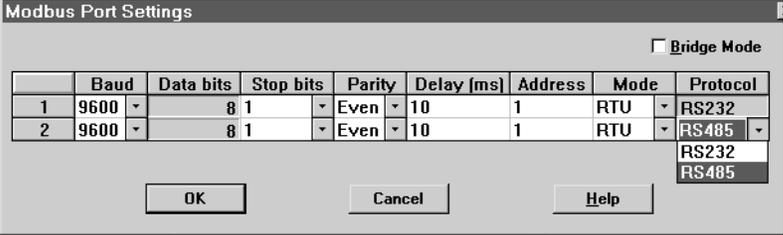
## Changing the Protocol on Modbus Port 2

### Overview

If your TSX Momentum M1 CPU is using the Modbus Port 2 provided by the 172 JNN 210 32 Option Adapter, you can specify whether it will use the RS232 or RS485 protocol. The factory-set default for Modbus Port 2 is RS485.

### Procedure

From the Modbus Port Settings dialog box, perform the steps in the following table to change the Protocol on Modbus Port 2.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the down arrow under the Protocol heading.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A menu appears with the two protocol options.</p> 
2	<p>Click on <b>RS232</b> or <b>RS485</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Modbus Port Settings dialog box is updated with the protocol you have specified.</p>

---

## Section 12.4

# Configuring Ethernet Address Parameters and I/O Scanning

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section describes how to configure the Ethernet port using Concept 2.2, including IP address, other address parameters and I/O scanning.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

<b>For This Topic...</b>	<b>See Page...</b>
Accessing the Ethernet / I/O Scanner Screen	322
Ethernet Configuration Options	324
Setting Ethernet Address Parameters	325
Configuring I/O	327
Completing the I/O Configuration	331

---

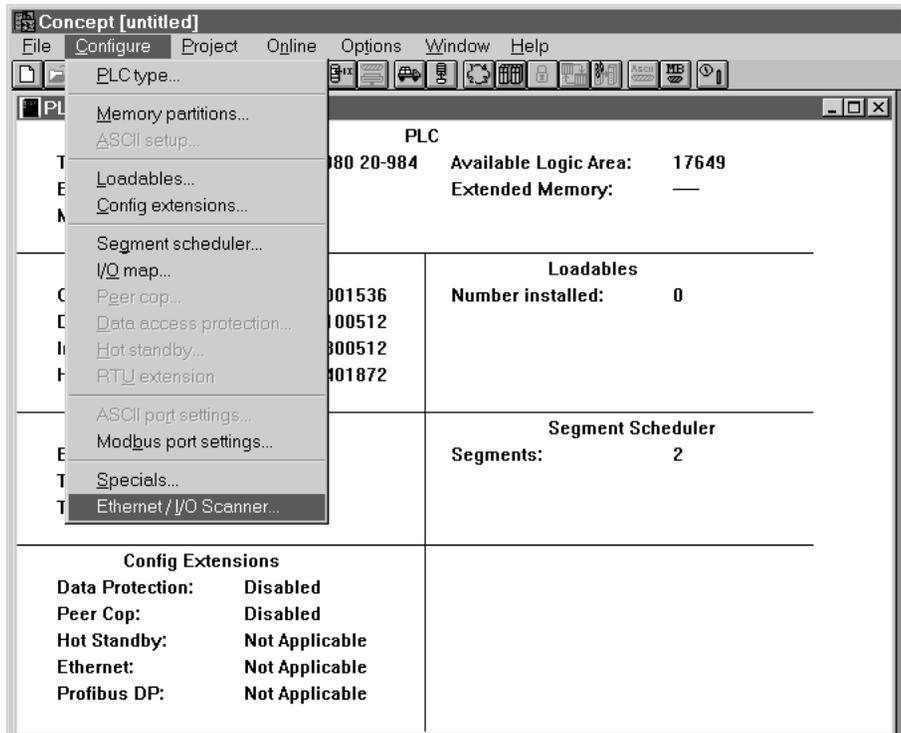
## Accessing the Ethernet / I/O Scanner Screen

### Introduction

Ethernet address and I/O scanning parameters can be modified using the Ethernet / I/O Scanner dialog box in Concept 2.2.

### How to Get There

From the Configure menu, select **Ethernet / I/O Scanner...** . This menu option will only be available if you have selected an M1 Processor Adapter with an Ethernet port.



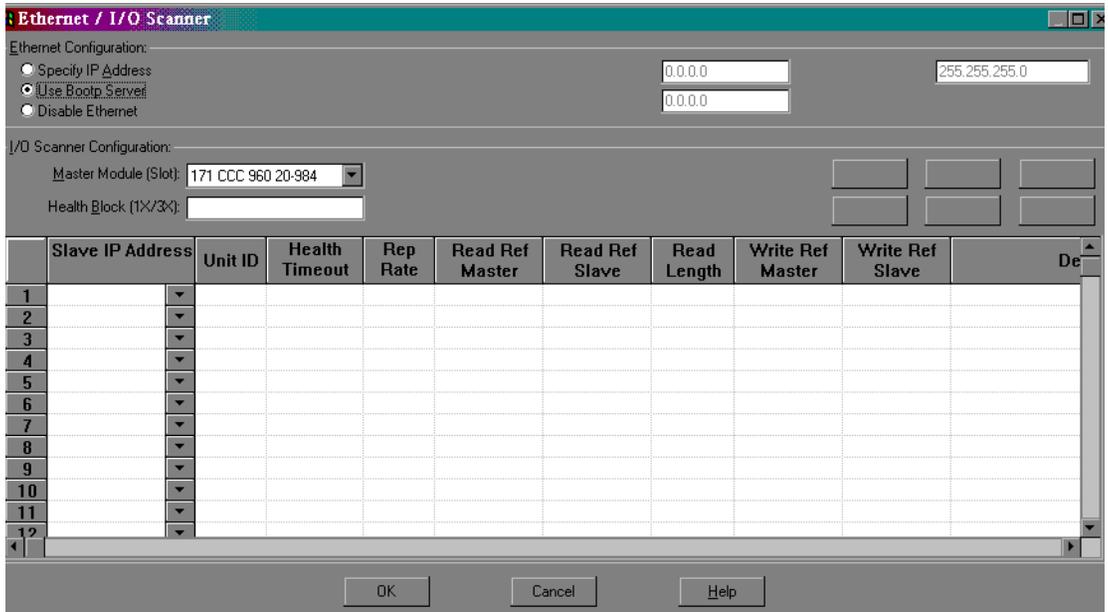
*Continued on next page*

## Accessing the Ethernet / I/O Scanner Screen, Continued

### Ethernet Port Default Settings

If you have not previously modified any port parameters, the following dialog box will appear. The dialog box shows the default parameters for the Ethernet port.

If you have previously modified any communication port parameters, the new values will appear in the dialog box.



## Ethernet Configuration Options

---

### Overview

The Ethernet / I/O Scanner screen offers three options for configuring the Ethernet port on an M1 Processor Adapter:

- Specify IP Address
  - Use Bootp Server
  - Disable Ethernet
- 

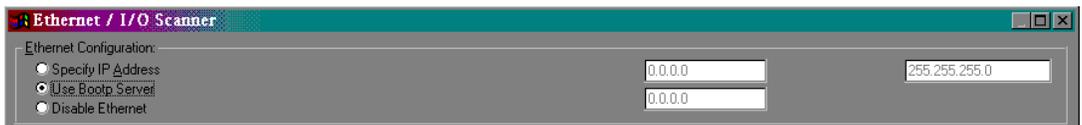
### Specify IP Address

This option allows you to type the IP address, gateway and subnet mask in the text boxes in the upper righthand corner of the screen.



### Use Bootp Server

This is the default. Click this radio button if you want the address parameters to be assigned by a Bootp server. If you select this option, the address parameter text boxes in the upper righthand corner of the screen will be grayed out. They will not display the actual address parameters.



### Disable Ethernet

Click this radio button if you want to disable the Ethernet port. Disabling the port will reduce the scan time for the Processor Adapter.



**Note:** DISABLING ETHERNET RESULTS IN LOSS OF COMMUNICATIONS. If you choose the Disable Ethernet option, you will no longer be able to communicate with the adapter via the Ethernet port. Programming must then be done via an RS485/232 port or via a Modbus Plus port.

---

## Setting Ethernet Address Parameters

### Overview

If you choose to specify the IP address, you should complete all three text boxes in the upper righthand corner of the dialog box:

- IP Address
- Gateway
- Subnet Mask



### CAUTION

#### POTENTIAL FOR DUPLICATE ADDRESSES

Obtain a valid IP address from your system administrator to avoid duplication

**Failure to observe this precaution can result in injury or equipment damage.**

### IP Address

Type a valid IP address in the Internet Address text box, as shown:

The screenshot shows the 'I/O Scanner' dialog box. Under 'Ethernet Configuration', the 'Specify IP Address' radio button is selected. The 'Internet Address' field contains '1.0.0.1', the 'Subnet Mask' field contains '255.255.255.0', and the 'Gateway' field contains '0.0.0.0'.

### Gateway

Consult your system administrator to determine the appropriate gateway. Type it in the Gateway text box, as shown:

This screenshot is identical to the one above, showing the 'I/O Scanner' dialog box with 'Specify IP Address' selected and the fields for Internet Address (1.0.0.1), Subnet Mask (255.255.255.0), and Gateway (0.0.0.0).

*Continued on next page*

## Setting Ethernet Address Parameters, Continued

---

### Subnet Mask

Consult your system administrator to obtain the appropriate subnet mask. Type it in the Subnet Mask text box, as shown:



## Configuring I/O

---

### Overview

Once the Ethernet port address parameters have been set, you may assign parameters for I/O scanning.

---

### Health Block

Specify the starting register of the register block which will contain the health bits for each of the IO Scanner transactions that you intend to configure.

If you designate a 3x register, the health bits for 64 transactions (maximum) will be stored in 4 contiguous registers starting at the address you specify.

If you designate a 1x register, the health bits will be stored in 64 contiguous discrete registers.

A health bit is set only if the associated transaction has completed successfully within the last health timeout period for that transaction (see below). When the PLC is started, all configured transactions have their respective health bit preset to 1. If the transaction subsequently fails, then the health bit is cleared after the programmed health timeout period has expired.

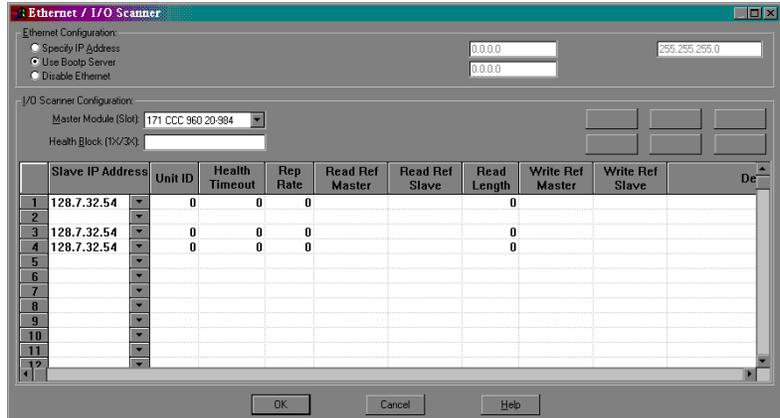
---

*Continued on next page*

## Configuring I/O, Continued

### IP Address

Type the IP address of the slave module in the IP address column. This address will be stored in a pulldown menu, so that you may use it in another row by clicking on the down arrow and selecting it, as shown:



### Unit ID

If the slave module is an I/O device attached to the specified slave module, use the Unit ID column to indicate the device number.

### Health Timeout

Use this column to specify the length of time in ms to try the transaction before timing out. Valid values are 0 ... 65,000 ms (1 min). To avoid timing out, specify 0.

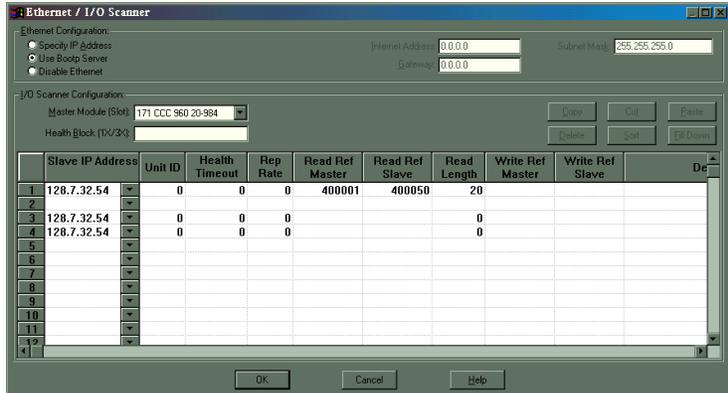
### Rep Rate

Use this column to specify how often in ms to repeat the transaction. Valid values are 0 ... 65,000 ms (1 min). To repeat the transaction continually, specify 0.

*Continued on next page*

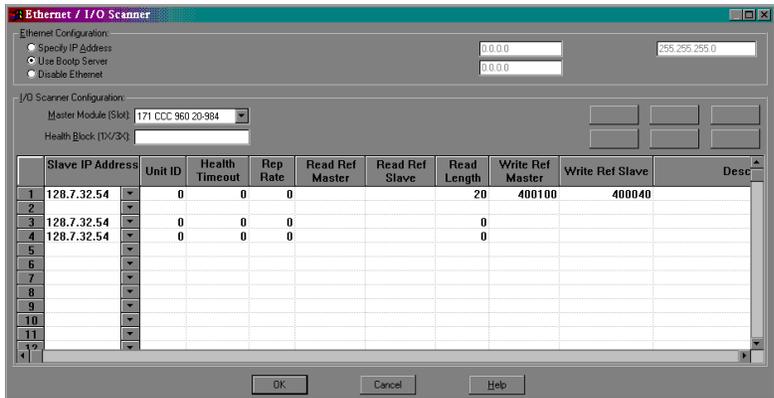
**Read**

Use the read function to read data from the slave to the master. The Read Ref Slave column specifies the first address to be read. The Read Count column specifies the number of registers to read. The Read Ref Master column specifies the first address to read to.



**Write**

Use the write function to write data from the master to the slave. The Write Ref Master column specifies the first address to write. The Write Count column specifies the number of registers to write. The Write Ref Slave column specifies the first address to write to:

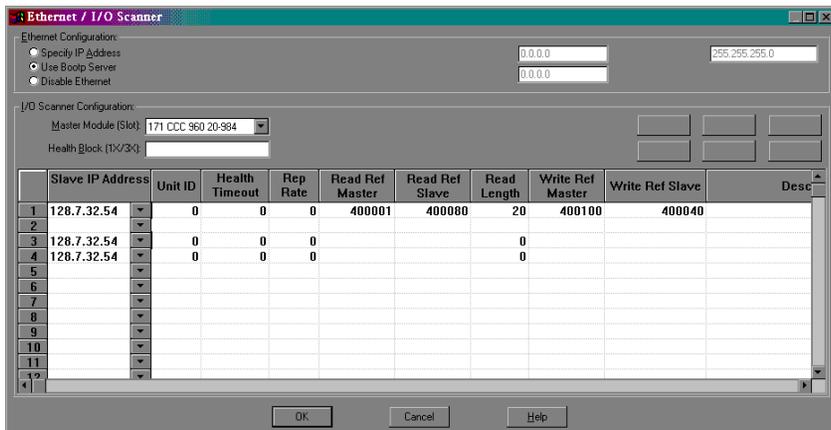


*Continued on next page*

## Configuring I/O, Continued

---

**Read and Write** You may include read and write commands on the same line, as shown:



**Description** You can type a brief description (up to 32 characters) of the transaction in the Description column.

---

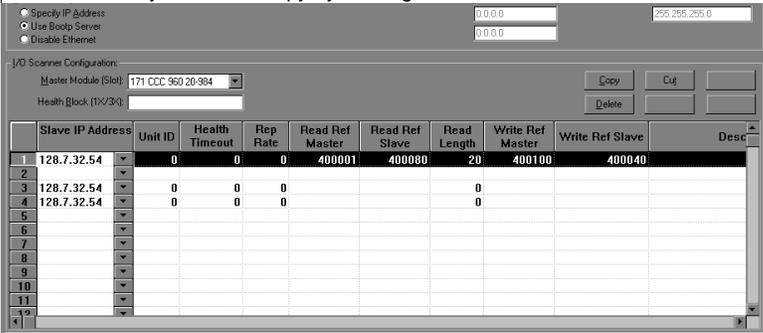
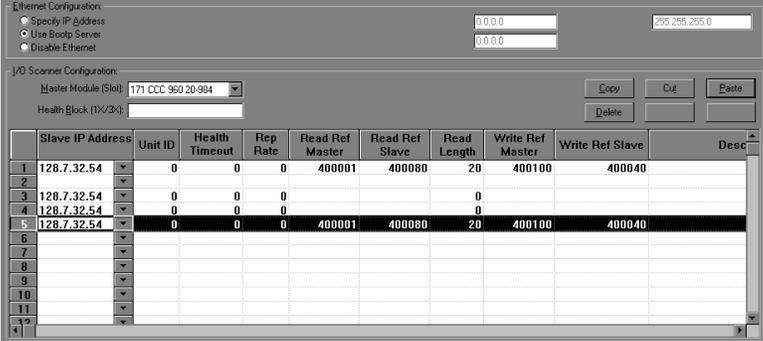
## Completing the I/O Configuration

### Introduction

This section describes how to complete your Ethernet I/O configuration using the Copy, Cut, Paste, Delete, Sort and Fill Down buttons.

### Copy and Paste

To save time when typing similar read and write commands, you may copy and paste entire rows within your configuration. Follow the steps in the table below:

Step	Action																																																																																																																																															
1	<p>Select the row you want to copy by clicking on the row number at the far left.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'I/O Scanner Configuration' window. At the top, there are radio buttons for 'Specify IP Address', 'Use Boot Server', and 'Disable Ethernet'. Below that, there are input fields for IP addresses. The 'I/O Scanner Configuration' section includes a dropdown for 'Master Module (Slot):' set to '171 CCC 960 20-984' and a 'Health Block (1X/3X):' field. Below this is a table with the following data:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Slave IP Address</th> <th>Unit ID</th> <th>Health Timeout</th> <th>Rep Rate</th> <th>Read Ref Master</th> <th>Read Ref Slave</th> <th>Read Length</th> <th>Write Ref Master</th> <th>Write Ref Slave</th> <th>Desc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>400001</td> <td>400080</td> <td>20</td> <td>400100</td> <td>400040</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>12</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Slave IP Address	Unit ID	Health Timeout	Rep Rate	Read Ref Master	Read Ref Slave	Read Length	Write Ref Master	Write Ref Slave	Desc	1	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040		2											3	128.7.32.54	0	0	0			0				4	128.7.32.54	0	0	0			0				5											6											7											8											9											10											11											12										
	Slave IP Address	Unit ID	Health Timeout	Rep Rate	Read Ref Master	Read Ref Slave	Read Length	Write Ref Master	Write Ref Slave	Desc																																																																																																																																						
1	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040																																																																																																																																							
2																																																																																																																																																
3	128.7.32.54	0	0	0			0																																																																																																																																									
4	128.7.32.54	0	0	0			0																																																																																																																																									
5																																																																																																																																																
6																																																																																																																																																
7																																																																																																																																																
8																																																																																																																																																
9																																																																																																																																																
10																																																																																																																																																
11																																																																																																																																																
12																																																																																																																																																
2	Click the <b>Copy</b> button above the I/O configuration list.																																																																																																																																															
3	Select the row where you would like to paste the data (by clicking on the row number at the far left).																																																																																																																																															
4	<p>Click the <b>Paste</b> button above the I/O configuration list.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'I/O Scanner Configuration' window. At the top, there are radio buttons for 'Specify IP Address', 'Use Boot Server', and 'Disable Ethernet'. Below that, there are input fields for IP addresses. The 'I/O Scanner Configuration' section includes a dropdown for 'Master Module (Slot):' set to '171 CCC 960 20-984' and a 'Health Block (1X/3X):' field. Below this is a table with the following data:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Slave IP Address</th> <th>Unit ID</th> <th>Health Timeout</th> <th>Rep Rate</th> <th>Read Ref Master</th> <th>Read Ref Slave</th> <th>Read Length</th> <th>Write Ref Master</th> <th>Write Ref Slave</th> <th>Desc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>400001</td> <td>400080</td> <td>20</td> <td>400100</td> <td>400040</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>400001</td> <td>400080</td> <td>20</td> <td>400100</td> <td>400040</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>12</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Slave IP Address	Unit ID	Health Timeout	Rep Rate	Read Ref Master	Read Ref Slave	Read Length	Write Ref Master	Write Ref Slave	Desc	1	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040		2											3	128.7.32.54	0	0	0			0				4	128.7.32.54	0	0	0			0				5	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040		6											7											8											9											10											11											12										
	Slave IP Address	Unit ID	Health Timeout	Rep Rate	Read Ref Master	Read Ref Slave	Read Length	Write Ref Master	Write Ref Slave	Desc																																																																																																																																						
1	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040																																																																																																																																							
2																																																																																																																																																
3	128.7.32.54	0	0	0			0																																																																																																																																									
4	128.7.32.54	0	0	0			0																																																																																																																																									
5	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040																																																																																																																																							
6																																																																																																																																																
7																																																																																																																																																
8																																																																																																																																																
9																																																																																																																																																
10																																																																																																																																																
11																																																																																																																																																
12																																																																																																																																																

Continued on next page

## Completing the I/O Configuration, Continued

---

**Cut and Paste** To move a row within the configuration list, follow the directions for copying, only use the Cut button instead of the Copy button.

---

**Delete** To delete a row from the configuration list, select the row by clicking on the row number at the far left. Then click the **Delete** button.

---

**Sort** To sort the I/O configuration list, select a column by clicking on the column heading (ie. Read Ref Master). Then click the **Sort** button.

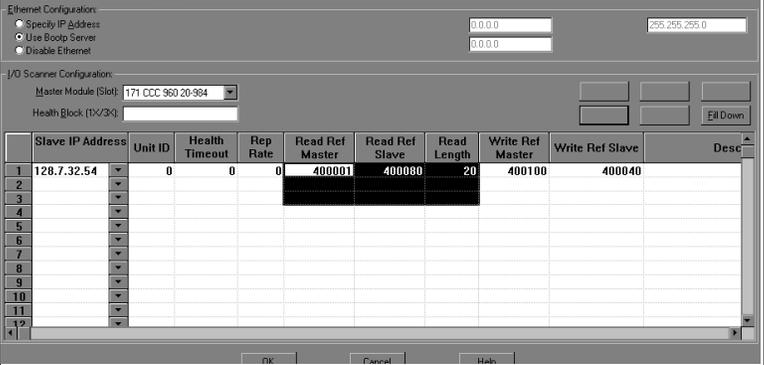
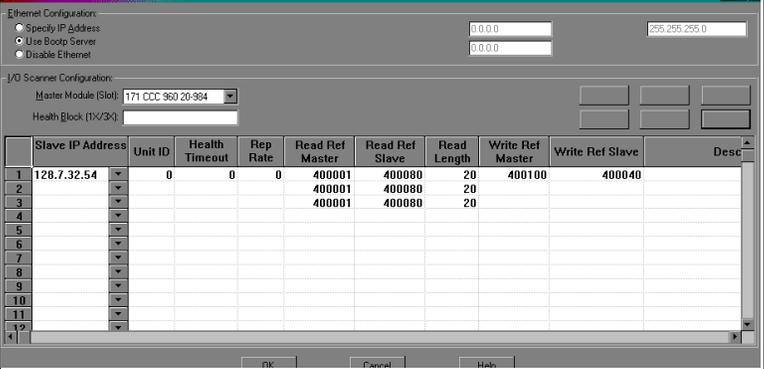
---

*Continued on next page*

## Completing the I/O Configuration, Continued

### Fill Down

To copy part of any row to the next row or to a series of adjoining rows, use the Fill Down button, following the steps in the table below:

Step	Action																																																																																																																																															
1	<p>Use your mouse to select the data you would like to copy and the cells you would like to copy it to.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select one contiguous block of cells, with the data to be copied in the first row. You cannot select two separate blocks.</p>  <p>Ethernet Configuration:  <input type="radio"/> Specify IP Address      0.0.0.0      255.255.255.0  <input type="radio"/> Use Bootp Server  <input type="radio"/> Disable Ethernet      0.0.0.0</p> <p>I/O Scanner Configuration:  Master Module (Slot): 171 CCC 960 20-984  Health Block (1X/3X):  <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Help"/> <input type="button" value="Fill Down"/></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Slave IP Address</th> <th>Unit ID</th> <th>Health Timeout</th> <th>Rep Rate</th> <th>Read Ref Master</th> <th>Read Ref Slave</th> <th>Read Length</th> <th>Write Ref Master</th> <th>Write Ref Slave</th> <th>Desc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>400001</td> <td>400080</td> <td>20</td> <td>400100</td> <td>400040</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>12</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Slave IP Address	Unit ID	Health Timeout	Rep Rate	Read Ref Master	Read Ref Slave	Read Length	Write Ref Master	Write Ref Slave	Desc	1	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040		2											3											4											5											6											7											8											9											10											11											12										
	Slave IP Address	Unit ID	Health Timeout	Rep Rate	Read Ref Master	Read Ref Slave	Read Length	Write Ref Master	Write Ref Slave	Desc																																																																																																																																						
1	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040																																																																																																																																							
2																																																																																																																																																
3																																																																																																																																																
4																																																																																																																																																
5																																																																																																																																																
6																																																																																																																																																
7																																																																																																																																																
8																																																																																																																																																
9																																																																																																																																																
10																																																																																																																																																
11																																																																																																																																																
12																																																																																																																																																
2	<p>Click the <b>Fill Down</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The data from the first row is copied to the selected cells below.</p>  <p>Ethernet Configuration:  <input type="radio"/> Specify IP Address      0.0.0.0      255.255.255.0  <input type="radio"/> Use Bootp Server  <input type="radio"/> Disable Ethernet      0.0.0.0</p> <p>I/O Scanner Configuration:  Master Module (Slot): 171 CCC 960 20-984  Health Block (1X/3X):  <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Help"/></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Slave IP Address</th> <th>Unit ID</th> <th>Health Timeout</th> <th>Rep Rate</th> <th>Read Ref Master</th> <th>Read Ref Slave</th> <th>Read Length</th> <th>Write Ref Master</th> <th>Write Ref Slave</th> <th>Desc</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>128.7.32.54</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>400001</td> <td>400080</td> <td>20</td> <td>400100</td> <td>400040</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>400001</td> <td>400080</td> <td>20</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>400001</td> <td>400080</td> <td>20</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>12</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Slave IP Address	Unit ID	Health Timeout	Rep Rate	Read Ref Master	Read Ref Slave	Read Length	Write Ref Master	Write Ref Slave	Desc	1	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040		2					400001	400080	20				3					400001	400080	20				4											5											6											7											8											9											10											11											12										
	Slave IP Address	Unit ID	Health Timeout	Rep Rate	Read Ref Master	Read Ref Slave	Read Length	Write Ref Master	Write Ref Slave	Desc																																																																																																																																						
1	128.7.32.54	0	0	0	400001	400080	20	400100	400040																																																																																																																																							
2					400001	400080	20																																																																																																																																									
3					400001	400080	20																																																																																																																																									
4																																																																																																																																																
5																																																																																																																																																
6																																																																																																																																																
7																																																																																																																																																
8																																																																																																																																																
9																																																																																																																																																
10																																																																																																																																																
11																																																																																																																																																
12																																																																																																																																																

## Section 12.5 I/O Mapping the Local I/O Points

### Accessing and Editing the I/O Map

#### Introduction

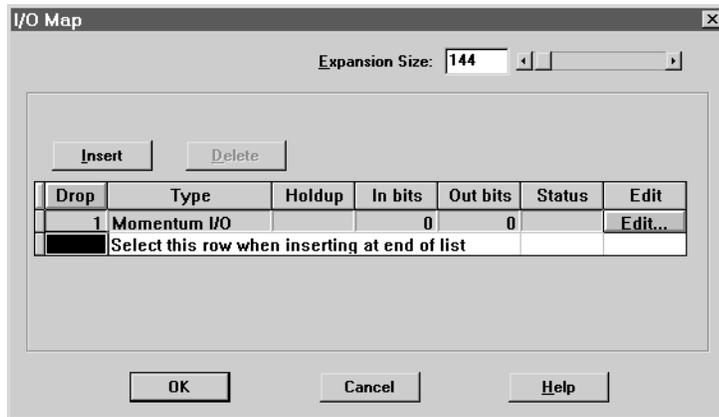
Every M1 Processor Adapter is assembled on an I/O base. The I/O points on the base are the local I/O for that processor.

As part of the configuration process, you need to create an I/O Map for the local I/O. The I/O Map assigns the appropriate range and type of reference values (0x, 1x, 3x, or 4x) from the CPU's state RAM to the input and/or output points on the local base unit.

#### Accessing an I/O Map Screen

To access an I/O Map screen from the PLC Configuration screen, select **I/O map...** from the **Configure** menu.

**Result:** The I/O Map dialog box appears.

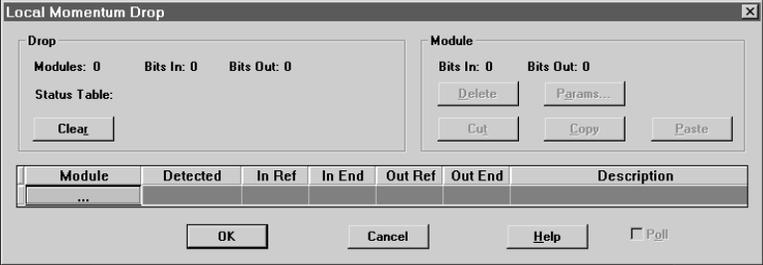
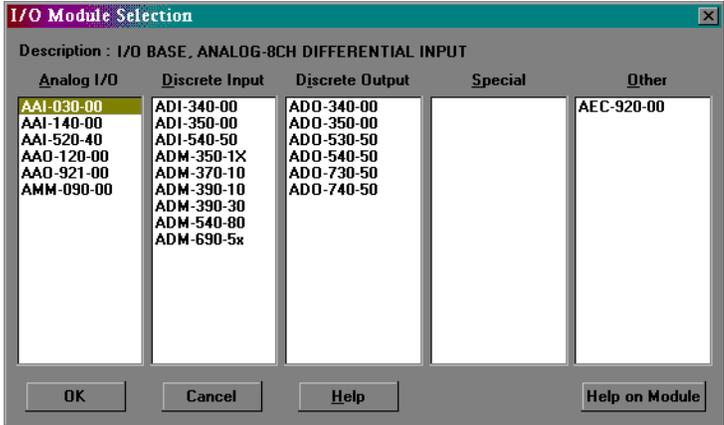


*Continued on next page*

## Accessing and Editing the I/O Map, Continued

### Editing the Local I/O Map

From the I/O Map dialog box, perform the steps in the following table to edit the local I/O Map:

Step	Action
1	<p>Click the <b>Edit...</b> button at the end of the row.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Local Momentum I/O dialog box appears.</p> 
2	<p>Click the button under Module and select your local I/O base from the dropdown menu.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Accessing and Editing the I/O Map, Continued

---

### Editing the Local I/O Map, Continued

Step	Action
3	Double-click on your selection or click the <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b> button.  <b>Result:</b> The I/O base you selected is displayed in the Local Momentum Drop dialog box.
4	Complete any required fields for Input and Output References.
5	Click the <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b> button.

---

### Local I/O Only

This screen is always used to I/O Map the local I/O base only. No other I/O base units can be I/O Mapped on this first screen.

---

### I/O Bus: A Special Case

If you are I/O Mapping a Processor Adapter which supports I/OBus communication stations, you will need to go to a separate I/O Map screen for Drop 2. That process is described in *I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Concept* on page 337.

---

---

# I/O Mapping an I/OBus Network with Concept

# 13

---

## At a Glance

**Purpose** This chapter describes how to I/O Map an I/OBus network using Concept 2.2.

---

**Topics** This chapter contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Supporting an I/O Map for an I/OBus Network	338
Accessing an I/O Map Screen for an I/OBus Network	339
Editing the I/OBus I/O Map	341

---

## Supporting an I/O Map for an I/OBus Network

---

### Introduction

Three Processor Adapters have an I/OBus communication port that enables them to control and communicate with other network slave I/O:

- 171 CCS 760 00
- 171 CCC 760 10
- 171 CCC 960 20

If you are using I/OBus to control network I/O, you need to write an I/O Map in your configuration. This section describes the configuration parameters required to support an I/O Map for I/OBus.

---

### I/O Map Reserved Words

Be sure that you have reserved enough words for I/O mapping to support your I/O Bus network. The default setting is 144 words. To estimate the number of words you require, allow:

- 16 words for overhead
- 10 words/module on the network (including both the local and the network I/O)

Allot sufficient memory to completely I/O Map your network, while preserving as much user memory as possible for your application program.

---

### Number of Segments

Be sure that the number of segments is set to 2. If you have changed this setting to 1, you will not be able to support an I/OBus network.

---

### Next Step

Once you are sure that your Configuration Overview parameters are set properly, you can access an I/O Map screen for an I/OBus network.

---

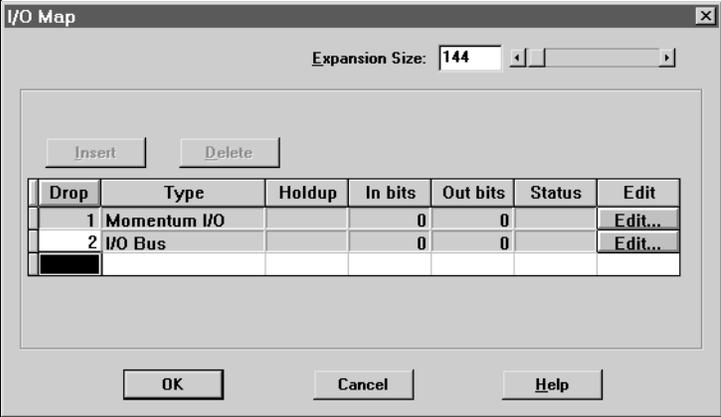
## Accessing an I/O Map Screen for an I/OBus Network

### Overview

This section describes how to access an I/O Map screen for an I/OBus network using Concept 2.2.

### Procedure

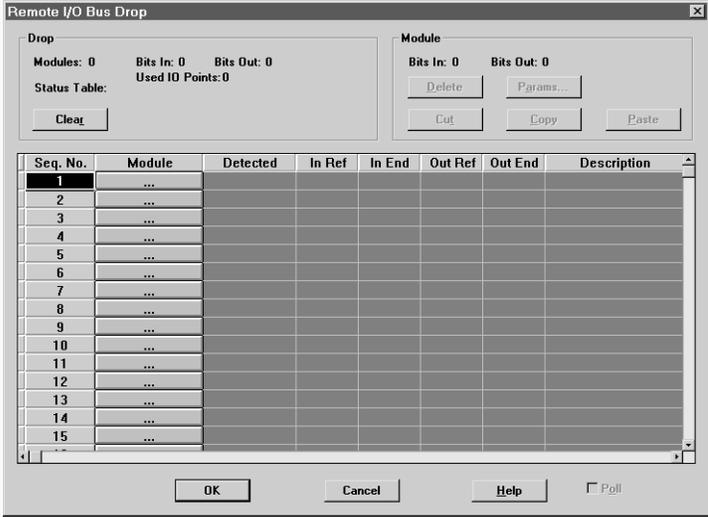
To access the I/O Map screen for your I/OBus network, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Configure menu, select <b>I/OMap</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The I/O Map dialog is displayed.</p>
2	<p>Click on the <b>Insert</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> I/OBus is displayed as the Type for Drop 2.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Accessing an I/O Map Screen for an I/OBus Network, Continued

**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>Click the <b>Edit...</b> button on the I/OBus line of the I/O Map dialog.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Remote I/O Bus Drop dialog appears.</p> 

**Next Step**

Editing the I/OBus I/O map.

## Editing the I/OBus I/O Map

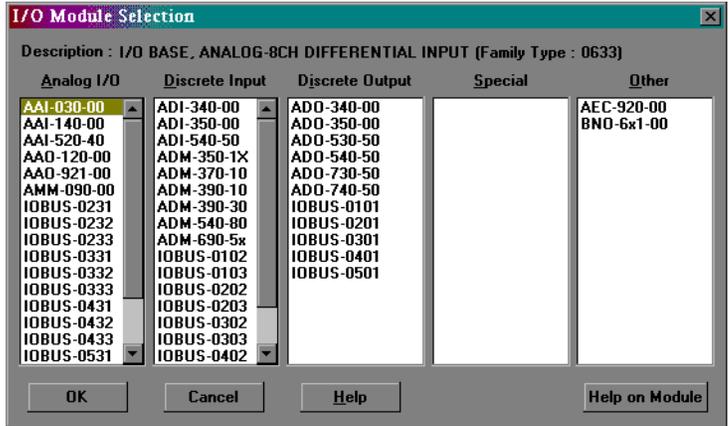
### Overview

The maximum number of modules which can be I/O Mapped on the I/OBus network depends on your Processor Adapter and its executive:

Processor Adapter	Executive	Max. Modules	Max. I/O Bits
171 CCS 760 00	984	128	2048
	IEC	44	1408
171 CCC 760 10	984		
	IEC		
171 CCC 960 20	984		
	IEC		

### Procedure

To enter I/O bases or Interbus I/O modules using the Remote I/OBus Drop dialog, perform the steps in the following table.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the button under the Module heading.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A list of module types is displayed, including I/OBus modules identified by code number (a list of codes is provided at the end of this section):</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Editing the I/O Bus I/O Map, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
2	Click on the desired model number and then click the <OK> button.  <b>Result:</b> The module type and its description are displayed on the Remote I/O Bus Drop screen. The proper field is enabled so that you can assign state RAM reference(s) to the unit.
3	Enter the desired reference number. Where there is more than one register the balance is automatically assigned.
4	Continue to select and map modules one after the other. You must enter the modules in contiguous node slots on the screen, e.g. you cannot enter a module in slot 7 if you have not filled slot 6.

### Generic InterBus Module Identifier Codes

InterBus device manufacturers embed an identifier code in their network slave modules in conformance with InterBus standards. The code identifies a device by its I/O type but not its specific model or name.

I/O Bus recognizes the InterBus identifier codes provided below and allows you to I/O Map devices that use these codes. However, you cannot use the module zoom screens to define the parameters for these InterBus modules.

Identifier Code	I/O Type
IOBUS-0101	One-word discrete output
IOBUS-0102	One-word discrete input
IOBUS-0103	One-word bidirectional
IOBUS-0201	Two-word discrete output
IOBUS-0202	Two-word input
IOBUS-0203	Two-word bidirectional
IOBUS-0231	Two-word analog output
IOBUS-0232	Two-word analog input
IOBUS-0233	Two-word analog bidirectional

*Continued on next page*

## Editing the I/OBus I/O Map, Continued

### Generic InterBus Module Identifier Codes, Continued

Identifier Code	I/O Type
IOBUS-0301	Three-word discrete output
IOBUS-0302	Three- word input
IOBUS-0303	Three-word bidirectional
IOBUS-0331	Three-word analog output
IOBUS-0332	Three-word analog input
IOBUS-0333	Three-word analog bidirectional
IOBUS-0401	Four-word discrete output
IOBUS-0402	Four-word input
IOBUS-0403	Four-word bidirectional
IOBUS-0431	Four-word analog output
IOBUS-0432	Four-word analog input
IOBUS-0433	Four-word analog bidirectional
IOBUS-0501	Five-word discrete output
IOBUS-0502	Five-word input
IOBUS-0503	Five-word bidirectional
IOBUS-0531	Five-word analog output
IOBUS-0532	Five-word analog input
IOBUS-0533	Five-word analog bidirectional
IOBUS-0633	Eight-word analog bidirectional
IOBUS-1233	16-word analog bidirectional



---

# Configuring a Modbus Plus Network in Concept with Peer Cop

# 14

---

## At a Glance

### Purpose

Communication transactions over Modbus Plus are defined in Concept 2.1 by a configuration tool called Peer Cop. This section uses examples to explain how to use Peer Cop to configure the two types of network architecture:

- An I/O network, where the Peer Cop of the CPU defines all the communication transactions over the full network.
- A supervisory network with two or more CPUs communicating with each other and with additional devices on the network.

---

### In This Chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

For This Topic...	See Section...	On Page...
Getting Started	1	346
Using Modbus Plus to Handle I/O	2	352
Passing Supervisory Data over Modbus Plus	3	363

## Section 14.1 Getting Started

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This section explains how to access the Peer Cop Configuration Extension screen and describes the default screen.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Accessing the Peer Cop Dialog Box	347
Adjusting the Amount of Extension Memory	349
Other Default Settings in the Peer Cop Dialog Box	350

---

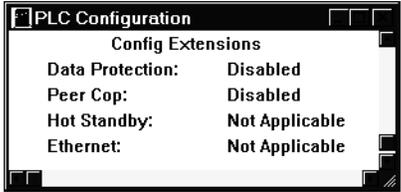
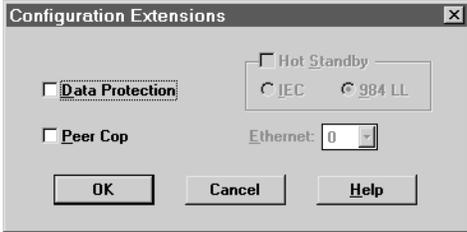
## Accessing the Peer Cop Dialog Box

### Introduction

This section describes how to access the Peer Cop dialog box in Concept 2.1.

### Accessing the Screen

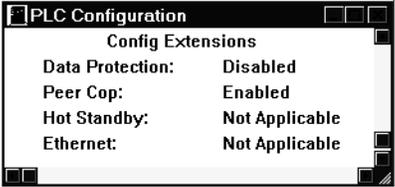
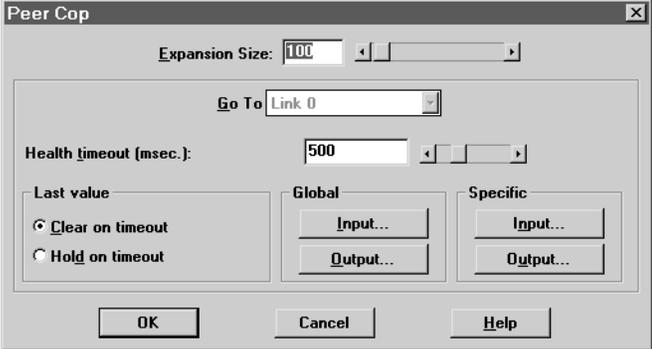
Follow the steps below to access the Peer Cop from the PLC Configuration Screen.

Step	Action
1	<p>Check the status of Peer Cop.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Peer Cop is enabled, jump to step 4.</li> <li>• If Peer Cop is disabled, continue with step 2.</li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b> The Peer Cop status is reported in the Configuration Extensions section of the PLC Configuration Screen. Here Peer Cop is disabled:</p> 
2	<p>Double-click on the Peer Cop field.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Configuration Extension dialog box appears.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Accessing the Peer Cop Dialog Box, Continued

### Accessing the Screen, Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>Click the check box next to Peer Cop, then click OK.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> Peer Cop status changes from Disabled to Enabled in the PLC Configuration screen.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a window titled 'PLC Configuration' with a 'Config Extensions' section. It lists four items: 'Data Protection: Disabled', 'Peer Cop: Enabled', 'Hot Standby: Not Applicable', and 'Ethernet: Not Applicable'. Each item has a small square checkbox to its right, and the 'Peer Cop' checkbox is checked.</p>
4	<p>Select <b>Peer Cop</b> from the Configure menu.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Peer Cop dialog box appears.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a dialog box titled 'Peer Cop'. It contains several fields and buttons: 'Expansion Size' (set to 100), 'Go To' (set to Link 0), 'Health timeout (msec.):' (set to 500), and radio buttons for 'Last value' (selected 'Clear on timeout'). There are also 'Global' and 'Specific' sections, each with 'Input...' and 'Output...' buttons. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.</p>

## Adjusting the Amount of Extension Memory

---

### Introduction

The default amount of memory allotted for Configuration Extension is 100 words. This amount may be adjusted within the Peer Cop dialog box.

---

### Extension Memory Size

The minimum Peer Cop memory requirement is 20 words; the maximum is 4041 words.

---

### Estimating How Much Memory to Reserve

Follow these guidelines for estimating the amount of extension memory you will need for your Peer Cop database::

For...	Add...	Up to a maximum of...
Overhead	9 words	--
Global output	5 words	--
Global input	number of words= number of devices x (1 + 2 x number of device subentries)	1088 words
Specific output	2 words for every device entry in Peer Cop	128 words
Specific input	2 words for every device entry in Peer Cop	128 words

---

### Changing the Amount of Memory

Type the desired size in the Expansion Size text box or use your mouse to adjust the button on the horizontal slider.

---

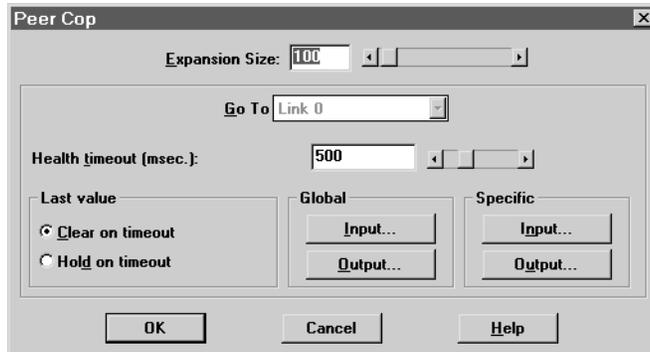
## Other Default Settings in the Peer Cop Dialog Box

---

**Overview** This section describes the default settings for Health Timeout and Last Value.

---

**Diagram** The first time you access the Peer Cop dialog box, the following screen appears:



**Health Timeout** The default Timeout is 500 ms .

*Timeout* is the maximum interval that Modbus Plus on a Peer-Copped device will remain healthy without communication activity. If this interval is exceeded, the device will clear its network health bit and will no longer try to communicate via Modbus Plus.

The timeout interval must be in the range 20...2000 ms, and it must be specified as an increment of 20 ms.

---

*Continued on next page*

---

## Other Default Settings in the Peer Cop Dialog Box, Continued

---

### Last Value

The default Last Value setting is `Clear on timeout`. This setting specifies how a peer-copped device will treat the last values received before a timeout, once Modbus Plus communications have been restored.

Option	Effect
Clear on timeout	Sets all values received before timeout to 0.
Hold on timeout	Retains the values received before timeout.

---

## Section 14.2

# Using Modbus Plus to Handle I/O

### Overview

---

#### Purpose

This section uses an example to explain how to configure a Modbus Plus network for I/O servicing. In this example, a CPU will control four Momentum I/O modules.

---

#### In This Section

This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Devices on the Network	353
Changing the Peer Cop Summary Information	354
Specifying References for Input Data	356
Specifying References for Output Data	360

---

---

## Devices on the Network

---

### Introduction

This section describes the five devices which comprise the sample network and the strategy used to assign addresses.

---

### The Network Devices

The following table lists the Modbus Plus address and components of each TSX Momentum module on the network:

Modbus Plus Address	I/O Base Type	Adapter Type
1	(type not specified)	M1 Processor Adapter (type not specified)  172 PNN 210 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapter
2	170 ADI 340 00 16-point input	170 PNT 110 20 Modbus Plus Communication Adapter
3	170 ADO 340 00 16-point output	170 PNT 110 20 Modbus Plus Communication Adapter
4	170 ADI 350 00 32-point input	170 PNT 110 20 Modbus Plus Communication Adapter
5	170 ADO 350 00 32-point output	170 PNT 110 20 Modbus Plus Communication Adapter

---

### Address Strategy

In this type of architecture, assign the lowest network address (1) to the CPU. When the network initializes, the CPU will be the first device to get the token, and the token rotation table will be built with respect to the controlling device on the network.

---

## Changing the Peer Cop Summary Information

---

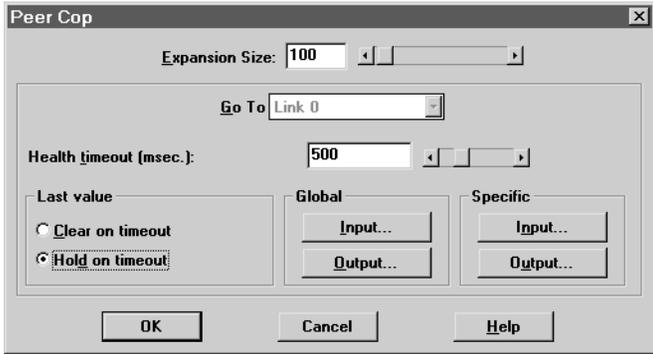
### Overview

For our example, we will change the default Health Timeout setting to 240 ms and the default Last Value setting to `Hold on timeout`.

---

### Procedure

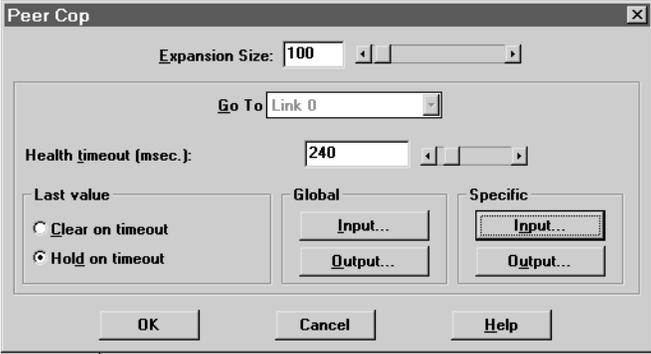
Follow the steps in the table below to change the default values, using the Peer Cop dialog box.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click the <b>Hold on Timeout</b> radio button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Hold on Timeout option is selected and the Clear on Timeout option is deselected.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Changing the Peer Cop Summary Information, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Select the Health Timeout default value (500) with your mouse and type the new value (<b>240</b>) in its place OR use the horizontal slider to change the value.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The new Health Timeout value is 240.</p> 

### Next Step

Specifying references for input data.

## Specifying References for Input Data

---

### Introduction

This section describes how to specify the references for input data. In this example, you will start by accessing the device at Modbus Plus address 2, which is a 170 ADI 340 00 16-point input module.

---

### Device Requirements

When you use Peer Cop to handle a Modbus Plus I/O architecture, you need to be aware of the type of I/O you are configuring at each network address. Peer Cop does not know that the device at address 2 is a discrete 16-point input module. You need to know that a specific input reference with a length of one word (16 bits) is required to handle this module.

We will assign a 3x register (300016) as a specific input to the CPU. When the the 170 ADI 340 00 sends input data to the CPU, it will be sent to this register.

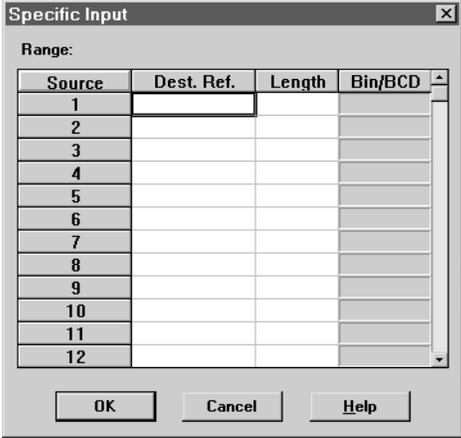
---

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Input Data, Continued

### Procedure

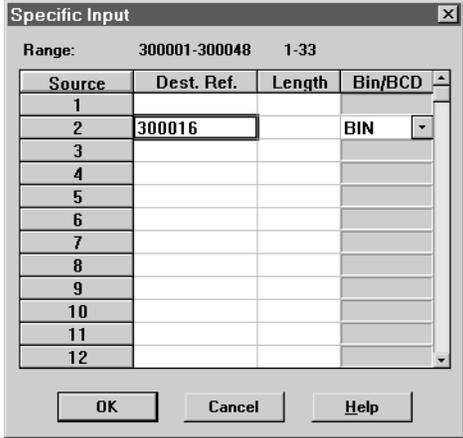
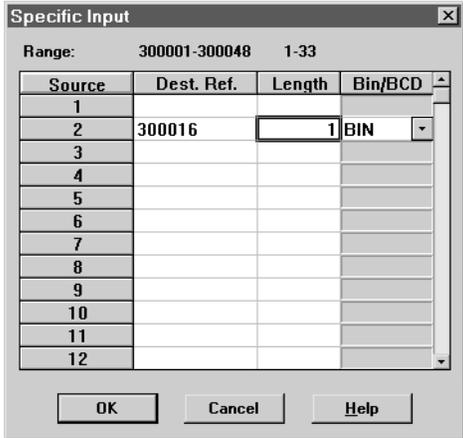
Follow the steps in the table below to define the specific input, starting from the Peer Cop dialog box.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the Specific <b>Input...</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Specific Input dialog box appears.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Input Data, Continued

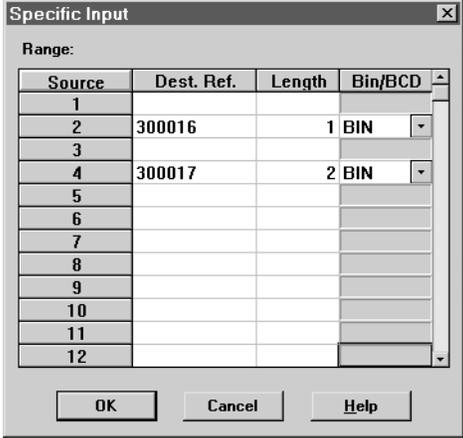
**Procedure,**  
Continued

Step	Action
2	<p>Since you are addressing the device at address 2, you will use the line for Source 2. Type the value <b>300016</b> on that line in the Dest. Ref. column.</p> 
3	<p>Type the value <b>1</b> in the Length column, indicating that the device at address 2 will exchange one word of data. In this case, we will leave the default BIN setting.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Input Data, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>Repeat steps 2 and 3 for the device at address 4, using the settings in the figure below. Then click <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b>.</p> 

### Next Step

Specifying output references.

## Specifying References for Output Data

---

### Introduction

This section describes how to specify the references for output data. In this example, you will start by accessing the device at Modbus Plus address 3, which is a 170 AD0 340 00 16-point output module.

---

### Device Requirements

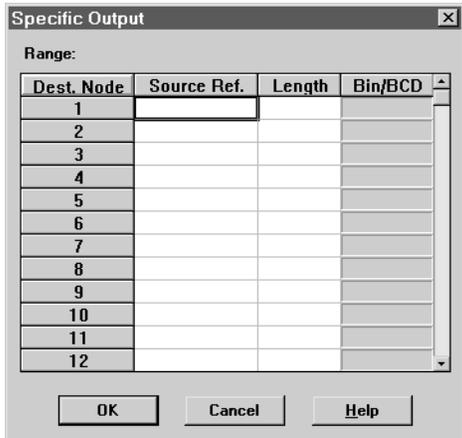
When you use Peer Cop to handle a Modbus Plus I/O architecture, you need to know which type of I/O you are configuring at each network address and how many input or output references each device requires. In this example, we will create a specific output reference with a length of one word (16 bits).

We also will assign a 4x register (400016) as a specific input to the CPU. When the the 170 ADO 340 00 sends input data to the CPU, it will be sent to this register.

---

### Procedure

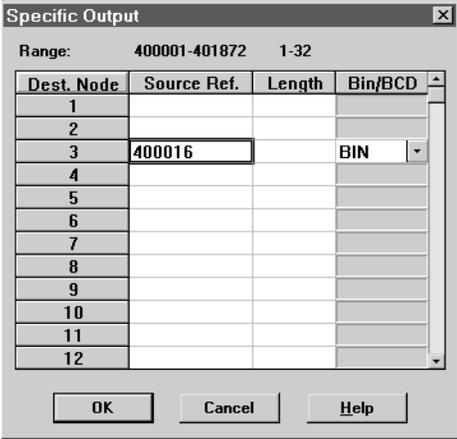
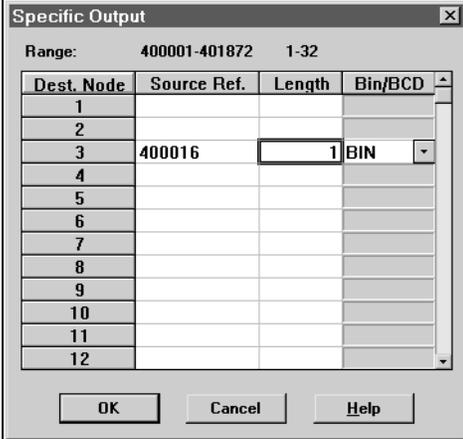
Follow the steps in the table below to define the specific output.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the Specific <b>Output...</b> button in the Peer Cop dialog box.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Specific Output dialog box appears.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Output Data, Continued

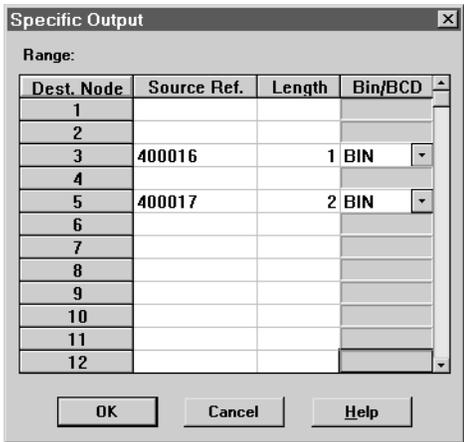
### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action																																																				
2	<p>Since you are addressing the device at address 3, you will use the line for Source 3. Type the value <b>400016</b> on that line in the Dest. Ref. column.</p>  <p><b>Specific Output</b></p> <p>Range: 400001-401872 1-32</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Dest. Node</th> <th>Source Ref.</th> <th>Length</th> <th>Bin/BCD</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>400016</td><td></td><td>BIN</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>OK Cancel Help</p>	Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD	1				2				3	400016		BIN	4				5				6				7				8				9				10				11				12			
Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD																																																		
1																																																					
2																																																					
3	400016		BIN																																																		
4																																																					
5																																																					
6																																																					
7																																																					
8																																																					
9																																																					
10																																																					
11																																																					
12																																																					
3	<p>Type the value <b>1</b> in the Length column, indicating that the device at address 3 will supply one word of data. In this case, we will leave the default BIN setting.</p>  <p><b>Specific Output</b></p> <p>Range: 400001-401872 1-32</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Dest. Node</th> <th>Source Ref.</th> <th>Length</th> <th>Bin/BCD</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>400016</td><td>1</td><td>BIN</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>OK Cancel Help</p>	Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD	1				2				3	400016	1	BIN	4				5				6				7				8				9				10				11				12			
Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD																																																		
1																																																					
2																																																					
3	400016	1	BIN																																																		
4																																																					
5																																																					
6																																																					
7																																																					
8																																																					
9																																																					
10																																																					
11																																																					
12																																																					

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Output Data, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action																																																				
4	<p>Repeat steps 2 and 3 for the device at address 5, using the settings in the figure below. Then click <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b>.</p>  <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Dest. Node</th><th>Source Ref.</th><th>Length</th><th>Bin/BCD</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>1</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>400016</td><td>1</td><td>BIN</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>400017</td><td>2</td><td>BIN</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>8</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>9</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>12</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table>	Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD	1				2				3	400016	1	BIN	4				5	400017	2	BIN	6				7				8				9				10				11				12			
Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD																																																		
1																																																					
2																																																					
3	400016	1	BIN																																																		
4																																																					
5	400017	2	BIN																																																		
6																																																					
7																																																					
8																																																					
9																																																					
10																																																					
11																																																					
12																																																					

---

## Section 14.3

# Passing Supervisory Data over Modbus Plus

### Overview

---

**Purpose** This Peer Cop example deals with a network where three CPUs communicate over Modbus Plus. Each device will need to have its own Peer Cop configuration.

---

**In This Section** This section contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Devices on the Network	364
Specifying References for Input and Output Data	365
Defining the References for the Next Node	369
Defining References for the Supervisory PLC	372

---

## Devices on the Network

---

### Introduction

This section describes the three CPUs which exchange data over the sample Modbus Plus network and the strategy used to assign node addresses.

---

### Devices

The three CPUs and their functions are described in the following table:

MB+ Address	CPU	Function
1	Pentium supervisory computer with an ATRIUM 180-CCO-111-01 host-based PLC card	Receives specific input data and sends global outputs
2	171 CCS 760 00 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter with 172 PNN 210 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapter	Controls I/OBus network and exchanges data with ATRIUM supervisor
3	171 CCS 760 00 TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapter with 172 PNN 210 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapter	Controls I/OBus network and exchanges data with ATRIUM supervisor

---

### Address Strategy

In this type of architecture, assign the lowest network address (1) to the supervisory computer. When the network initializes, the supervisor will be the first device to get the token, and the token rotation table will be built with respect to the supervising device.

---

## Specifying References for Input and Output Data

### Overview

We will now set up the 171 CCS 760 00 TSX Momentum M1 CPU at Modbus Plus address 2 to:

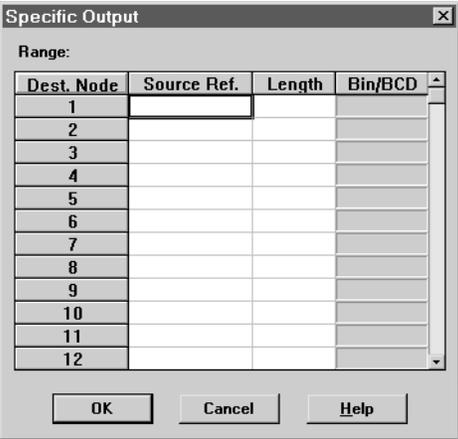
- send eight 4x registers of specific output to the supervisory computer at Modbus Plus address 1.
- receive five 4x registers of global input data from the ATRIUM supervisor. These registers are the first five registers in a 10-register block of global outputs broadcast by the supervisory controller.



**Note:** For this example, we will use the default values for Health Timeout (500 ms) and Last Value (Clear on timeout).

### Defining the Specific Output

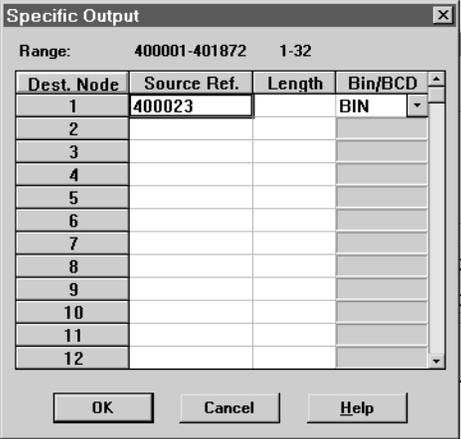
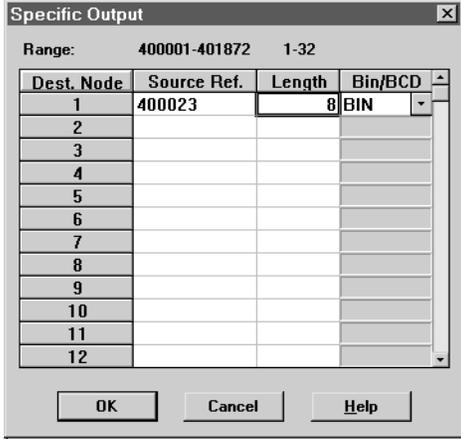
The following table describes how to define the specific output, starting from the Peer Cop dialog box.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the Specific <b>Output...</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Specific Output dialog box appears.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Input and Output Data, Continued

### Defining the Specific Output, Continued

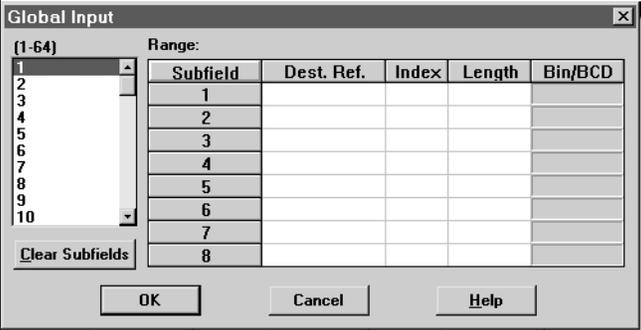
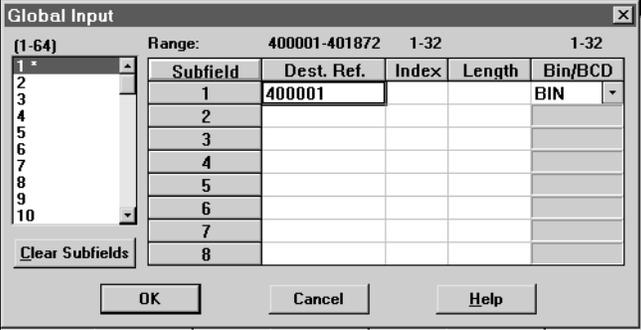
Step	Action
2	<p>Since you are addressing the device at address 1, you will use the line for Source 1. Type the value <b>400023</b> on that line in the Dest. Ref. column.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Specific Output" with a close button (X). Below the title bar, it says "Range: 400001-401872 1-32". There is a table with four columns: "Dest. Node", "Source Ref.", "Length", and "Bin/BCD". The first row (Dest. Node 1) has "400023" in the "Source Ref." column and "BIN" in the "Bin/BCD" column. The other rows (Dest. Node 2-12) are empty. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Help".</p>
3	<p>Type the value <b>8</b> in the Length column, indicating that 8 words of data will be exchanged. In this case, we will leave the default BIN setting. Click <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b>.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the same "Specific Output" dialog box. In this view, the "Length" column for the first row (Dest. Node 1) now contains the value "8". All other elements, including the "Source Ref." (400023) and "Bin/BCD" (BIN) settings, remain the same as in the previous screenshot. The "OK", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons are still present at the bottom.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Input and Output Data, Continued

### Defining the Global Inputs

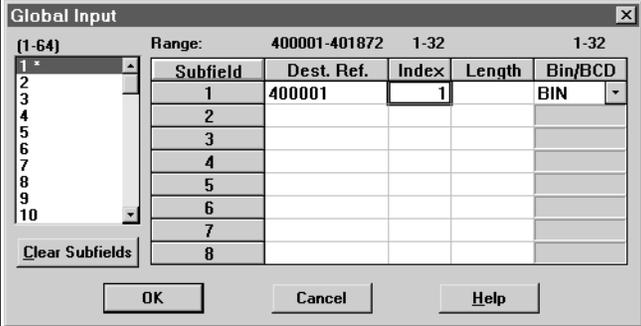
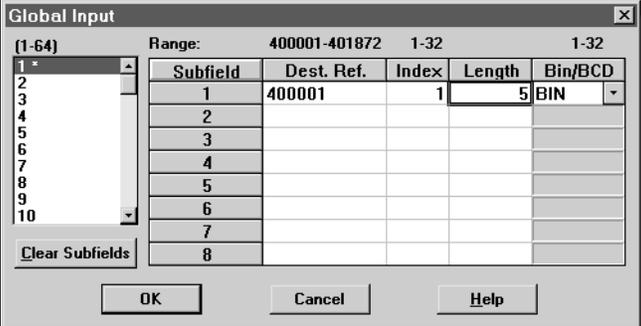
Now the M1 needs to be Peer Copped to receive five words of global data from the supervisory PLC at Modbus Plus address 1. Follow the steps in the table specify the input reference.

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the Global <b>Input...</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Global Input dialog box appears.</p> 
2	<p>Since this device will be receiving data from the CPU at address 1, you do not need to change the default sending address (selected under the heading 1-64). Type <b>400001</b> in the Dest. Ref column on the first line, to indicate the first register the CPU will use to store the input data..</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Specifying References for Input and Output Data, Continued

### Defining the Global Inputs, Continued

Step	Action
3	<p>Type the value 1 in the Index column, indicating that the CPU will receive part of the global input data beginning with the first word.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Global Input" with a close button (X). It features a list of subfields (1-10) on the left and a table on the right. The table has columns: Subfield, Dest. Ref., Index, Length, and Bin/BCD. Subfield 1 is selected, and its Index is set to 1. The Dest. Ref. is 400001. The Bin/BCD is set to BIN. There are "Clear Subfields", "OK", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons at the bottom.</p>
4	<p>Type the value 5 in the Length column, indicating that the CPU will accept five words of the global input data. Leave the default BIN setting.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the same "Global Input" dialog box. In this step, the 'Length' column for subfield 1 is set to 5. All other values (Subfield 1, Dest. Ref. 400001, Index 1, Bin/BCD BIN) remain the same. The "OK", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons are visible at the bottom.</p>
5	<p>Click &lt;OK&gt;.</p>

### Next Step

Defining the references for the next node.

## Defining the References for the Next Node

---

### Overview

We now want to attach the Concept 2.1 programming panel to the 171 CCS 760 00 TSX Momentum M1 CPU at Modbus Plus address 3 and create a similar Peer Cop for this device to communicate with the supervisory PLC at Modbus Plus address 1. In this case, we want the M1:

- to send 16 words of specific output to the supervisor.
- to receive the last seven words of global input from the supervisor. (Remember that the supervisor will be transmitting a total of 10 contiguous words of global data over the network.)

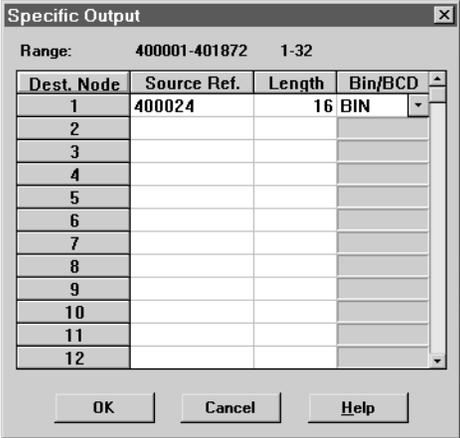
---

*Continued on next page*

## Defining the References for the Next Node, Continued

### Defining Specific Outputs

Follow the steps in the table below to define the specific output in Peer Cop.

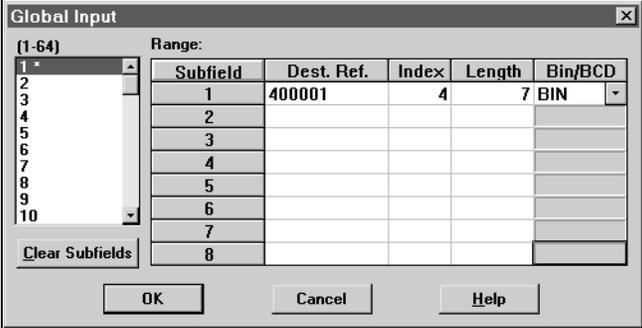
Step	Action
1	Click on the Specific <b>Output...</b> button.  <b>Result:</b> The Specific Output dialog box appears.
2	Since you are addressing the device at address 1, you will use the line for Source 1. Type the value <b>400024</b> on that line in the Dest. Ref. column.
3	Type the value <b>16</b> in the Length column, indicating that 16 words of data will be exchanged. In this case, we will leave the default BIN setting.  
4	Click <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b> .

*Continued on next page*

## Defining the References for the Next Node, Continued

### Defining Global Inputs

Follow the steps in the table below to define the global input data from the supervisory PLC at Modbus Plus address 1.

Step	Action
1	Click on the Global <b>Input...</b> button.  <b>Result:</b> The Global Input dialog box appears.
2	Since this device will be receiving data from the CPU at address 1, you do not need to change the default sending address (selected under the heading 1-64). Type <b>400001</b> in the Dest. Ref column on the first line, to indicate the first register the CPU will use to store the input data.
3	Type the value <b>4</b> in the Index column, indicating that the CPU will receive part of the global input data beginning with the fourth word.
4	Type the value <b>7</b> in the Length column, indicating that the CPU will accept seven words of the global input data. Leave the default BIN setting.
	
5	Click <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b> .

### Next Step

Defining references for the supervisory PLC.

## Defining References for the Supervisory PLC

### Overview

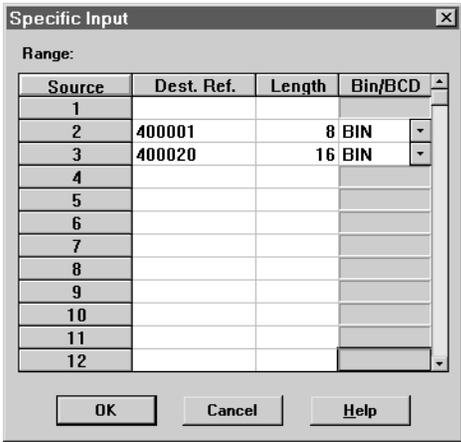
At this point, we will attach the Concept 2.1 programming panel to the ATRIUM 180-CCO-111-01 supervisory PLC at Modbus Plus address 1 and set up Peer Cop screens to handle the M1 CPUs at addresses 2 and 3.

We know that the M1 at Modbus Plus address 2 is sending eight words of specific output to the supervisor and that the M1 at Modbus Plus address 3 is sending 16 words of specific output to the supervisor. The supervisor will receive this data as specific inputs.

We also know that the supervisor is sending 10 words of global data, parts of which will be received by both of the M1 CPUs.

### Defining the Specific Inputs

First we will define the specific inputs to be received by the supervisor.

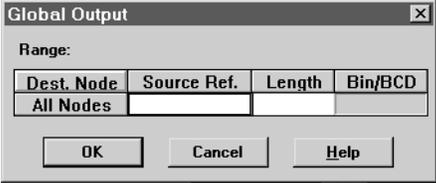
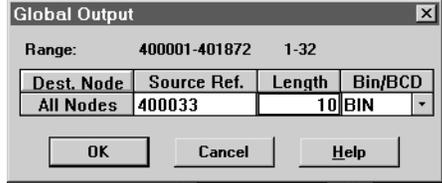
Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the Specific <b>Input...</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Specific Input dialog box appears.</p>
2	<p>Enter the references for each CPU on the appropriate source line, as shown below. Then click <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b>.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Defining References for the Supervisory PLC, Continued

### Defining the Global Outputs

This supervisory CPU sends out 10 words of global output, parts of which are received by each of the M1 CPUs.

Step	Action																
1	<p>Click on the Global <b>Output...</b> button.</p> <p>Result: The Global Output dialog box appears.</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="4">Global Output</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="4">Range:</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Dest. Node</th> <th>Source Ref.</th> <th>Length</th> <th>Bin/BCD</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>All Nodes</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Global Output				Range:				Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD	All Nodes			
Global Output																	
Range:																	
Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD														
All Nodes																	
2	In the Source Ref. column, type the value <b>400033</b> , the first register which will be sent.																
3	In the Length column, type the value <b>10</b> , the number of registers that will be sent.																
	 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="4">Global Output</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="4">Range:</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Dest. Node</th> <th>Source Ref.</th> <th>Length</th> <th>Bin/BCD</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>All Nodes</td> <td>400033</td> <td>10</td> <td>BIN</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Global Output				Range:				Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD	All Nodes	400033	10	BIN
Global Output																	
Range:																	
Dest. Node	Source Ref.	Length	Bin/BCD														
All Nodes	400033	10	BIN														
4	Click <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b> .																



---

# Saving to Flash with Concept

15

---

## Saving to Flash

### Overview

You save to Flash so that, in the event of an unexpected loss of power, the application logic and state RAM values will be preserved.

This section describes how to save the application logic and state RAM values to Flash using Concept 2.1.



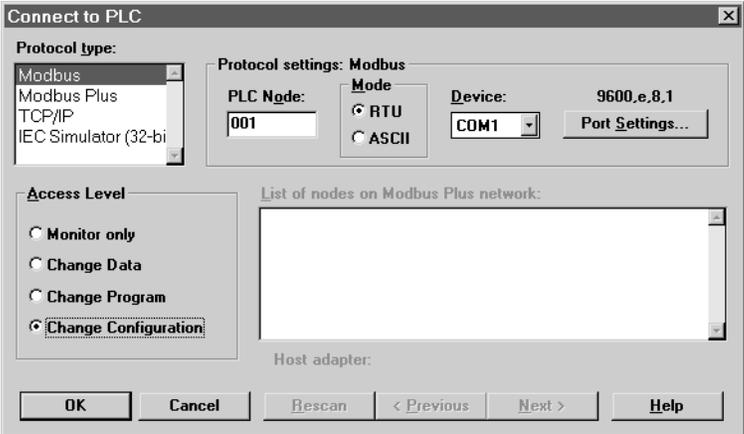
**Note:** You may only save to Flash if you are using the Concept 984 executive. You cannot save to Flash if you are using the Concept IEC executive.

---

## Saving to Flash, Continued

### Procedure

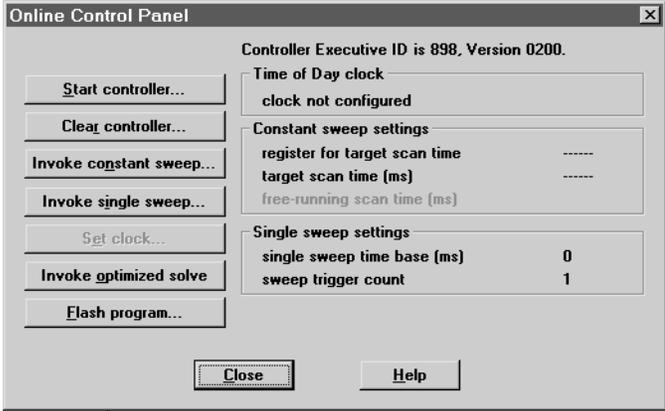
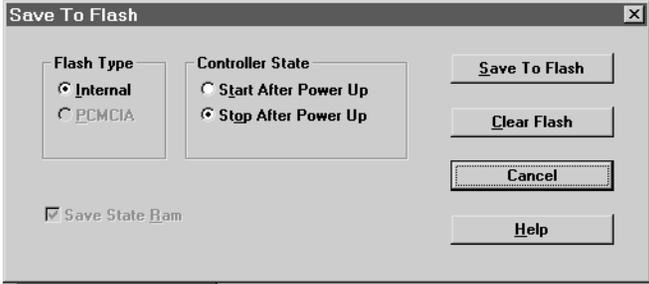
Follow the steps in the table below to save to Flash:

Step	Action
1	<p>From the Online menu on the main menu bar, select <b>Connect</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Connect to PLC dialog box appears.</p> 
2	<p>Select the correct parameters to connect with your PLC. Under Access Level, select the radio button to <b>Change Configuration</b>.</p>
3	<p>Click <b>&lt;OK&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Connect to PLC dialog box disappears and Concept connects to your PLC.</p>

*Continued on next page*

## Saving to Flash, Continued

### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
4	<p>From the Online menu on the main menu bar, select <b>Online control panel</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Online Control Panel appears.</p> 
5	<p>Click the <b>Flash program...</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The Save to Flash dialog box appears.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## Saving to Flash, Continued

---

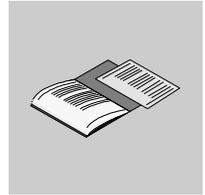
### Procedure, Continued

Step	Action
6	Select the appropriate parameters in the dialog box and click the <b>Save to Flash</b> button.  <b>Result:</b> A dialog box will appear asking if you really want to save to Flash.
7	Click the <b>Yes</b> button.  <b>Result:</b> Concept completes the save to Flash and a message appears on the screen confirming the completed save.

---

---

# Appendices



---

## At a Glance

**Purpose** This part provides supplemental information on Ladder Logic elements and instructions and LED flash patterns and error codes.

**In This Part** This part contains the following chapters:

For Information On ...	See Appendix...	See Page...
Ladder Logic Elements and Instructions	A	381
Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes	B	393



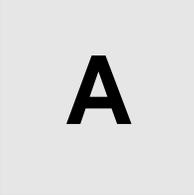
**Note:** For information about the 171 CPS 111 00 TIO Power Supply Module, refer to 870 Use 101 00 V. 3 *TSX Momentum I/O Base User Guide*

---



---

# Ladder Logic Elements and Instructions



---

## At a Glance

### Overview

The executive firmware for the TSX Momentum M1 Processor Adapters supports the ladder logic programming language for control applications. The following core set of ladder logic elements (contacts, coils, vertical and horizontal shorts) and instructions are built into the CPU's firmware package. For a detailed description of all instructions, see the *Ladder Logic Block Library User Guide* (840 USE 101 00).

---

### In This Appendix

This appendix contains the following topics:

For This Topic...	See Page...
Standard Ladder Logic Elements	382
DX Loadable Support	386
A Special STAT Instruction	387

---

## Standard Ladder Logic Elements

---

### Introduction

This section provides a glossary of standard ladder logic symbols and instructions.

---

### Ladder Logic Symbols

The table below provides the meaning of standard ladder logic symbols.

Symbol	Meaning	Nodes Consumed
	Normally open (N.O.) contact	1
	Normally closed (N.C.) contact	1
	Positive transitional (P.T.) contact	1
	Negative transitional (N.T.) contact	1
	Normal coil	1
	Memory-retentive or latched coil; the two symbols mean the same thing, and the user may select the preferred version for online display.	1
	Horizontal short	1
	Vertical short	0

*Continued on next page*

## Standard Ladder Logic Elements, Continued

### Standard Ladder Logic Instructions

The table below provides standard ladder logic instructions and their meaning.

Symbol	Meaning	Nodes Consumed
<b>Counter and Timer Instructions</b>		
UCTR	Counts up from 0 to a preset value	2
DCTR	Counts down from a preset value to 0	2
T1.0	Timer that increments in seconds	2
T0.1	Timer that increments in tenths of a second	2
T.01	Timer that increments in hundredths of a second	2
T1MS	A timer that increments in milliseconds	3
<b>Integer Math Instructions</b>		
ADD	Adds top node value to middle node value	3
SUB	Subtracts middle node value from top node value	3
MUL	Multiplies top node value by middle node value	3
DIV	Divides top node value by middle node value	3
<b>DX Move Instructions</b>		
R∇T	Moves register values to a table	3
T∇R	Moves specified table values to a register	3
T∇T	Moves a specified set of values from one table to another table	3
BLKM	Moves a specified block of data	3
FIN	Specifies first-entry in a FIFO queue	3
FOUT	Specifies first-entry out of a FIFO queue	3
SRCH	Performs a table search	3
STAT	CROSS REF	1

*Continued on next page*

## Standard Ladder Logic Elements, Continued

### Standard Ladder Logic Instructions, Continued

Symbol	Meaning	Nodes Consumed
<b>DX Matrix Instructions</b>		
AND	Logically ANDs two matrices	3
OR	Does logical inclusive OR of two matrices	3
XOR	Does logical exclusive OR of two matrices	3
COMP	Performs logical complement of values in a matrix	3
CMPR	Logically compares values in two matrices	3
MBIT	Logical bit modify	3
SENS	Logical bit sense	3
BROT	Logical bit rotate	3
AD16	Signed/unsigned 16-bit addition	3
SU16	Signed/unsigned 16-bit subtraction	3
TEST	Compares the magnitudes of the values in the top and middle nodes	3
MU16	Signed/unsigned 16-bit multiplication	3
DV16	Signed/unsigned 16-bit division	3
ITOF	Signed/unsigned integer-to-floating point conversion	3
FTOI	Floating point-to-signed/unsigned integer conversion	3
EMTH	Performs 38 math operations, including floating point math operations and extra integer math operations such as square root	3
<b>Ladder Logic Subroutine Instructions</b>		
JSR	Jumps from scheduled logic scan to a ladder logic subroutine	2
LAB	Labels the entry point of a ladder logic subroutine	1
RET	Returns from the subroutine to scheduled logic	1

*Continued on next page*

## Standard Ladder Logic Elements, Continued

### Standard Ladder Logic Instructions, Continued

Symbol	Meaning	Nodes Consumed
<b>Other Special Purpose Instructions</b>		
CKSM	Calculates any of four types of checksum operations (CRC-16, LRC, straight CKSM, and binary add)	3
MSTR	Specifies a function from a menu of networking operations	3
PID2	Performs proportional-integral-derivative calculations for closed-loop control	3
TBLK	Moves a block of data from a table to another specified block area	3
BLKT	Moves a block of registers to specified locations in a table	3
XMIT	Allows CPU to act as a Modbus master	3

## DX Loadable Support

---

### Introduction

The M1 CPUs can use DX loadable instructions, which support optional software products that can be purchased for special applications. DX loadables provide the user with special ladder logic functions.

---

### Loaded on Page 0

The code for DX loadables gets loaded into the Page 0 area. Thus, for every word of DX loadable that is loaded, one word of Page 0 becomes unavailable for other use (such as application logic).

---

### Limited Functionality

DX loadables are limited in the functionality they can provide because they do not provide storage for variables and are limited in their size.

---

### M1 Support

M1 supports only loadables targeted for 80x86 microprocessors running in 16-bit real mode that have not made any hard-coded hardware assumptions (e.g., the address and format of the TOD clock). Obviously, there must be enough available memory to fit the loadable.

---

### Saved to Flash

Since DX loadables are stored in Page 0 memory, they are saved whenever a save-to-Flash operation is initiated.

---

## A Special STAT Instruction

### Overview

A special version of the STAT instruction has been developed to support Momentum M1 CPUs. The STAT instruction accesses a specified number of words in a status table in the CPU's system memory. Here vital diagnostic information regarding the health of the CPU and the I/OBus I/O under its control is posted.

From the STAT instruction, you can copy some or all of the status words into a block of registers or a block of contiguous discrete references.

This section describes the STAT instruction.

### Avoid Discretes

We recommend that you do not use discretes in the STAT destination node because of the excessive number required to contain status information.

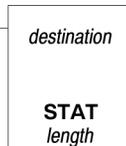
### Specify Length

The copy to the STAT block always begins with the first word in the table up to the last word of interest to you. For example, if the status table is 20 words long and you are interested only in the statistics provided in word 11, you need to copy only words 1...11 by specifying a *length* of 11 in the STAT instruction.

### Diagram of STAT Block

The STAT block includes a top node (for destination) and a bottom node (for length). The STAT block is represented in the following illustration.

ON copies specified number of words from the status table



ON = operation successful

*Continued on next page*

## A Special STAT Instruction, Continued

---

### Top Node Content

The reference number entered in the top node is the first position in the destination block—i.e., the block where the current words of interest from the status table will be copied. The reference may be:

- The first 0x reference in a block of contiguous discrete outputs
  - The first 4x reference in a block of contiguous holding registers
- 

### Bottom Node Content

The integer value entered in the bottom node specifies the number of registers or 16-bit words in the destination block where the current status information will be written.

The length—i.e., number of words—in the status table will vary depending on whether or not I/OBus I/O is being supported:

- Without I/OBus, the STAT instruction is 12 words long.
  - With I/OBus, the instruction is 20 words long.
-

## A Special STAT Instruction, Continued

### Words 1...12

The first 12 words describe the CPU status and are detailed in the following table:

Word	Description
1	<p>Displays the following aspects of the PLC's status:</p> <p>If the bit is set to 1, then the condition is TRUE.</p> <p>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16</p> <p>Battery Failed Always 1 Run Light OFF AC Power ON 1 = 16 Bit User Logic 0 = 24 Bit User Logic Single Sweep Delay Enabled Constant Sweep Enabled</p>
2	Reserved for internal use.
3	<p>Displays more aspects of the controller status:</p> <p>If the bit is set to 1, then the condition is TRUE.</p> <p>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16</p> <p>Exiting DIM AWARENESS Constant Sweep Times Exceeded Start Command Pending First Scan Single Sweeps</p>
4	Not used.

*Continued on next page*

## A Special STAT Instruction, Continued

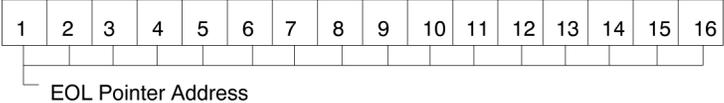
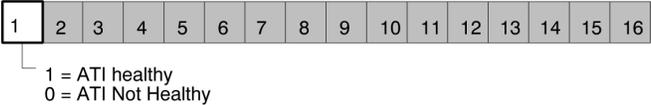
Words 1...12,  
Continued

Word	Description
5	<p>Displays the PLC's stop state conditions:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">If the bit is set to 1, then the condition is TRUE.</p> <p>CPU Logic Solver Failed (for chassis mount controllers) or Coil Use Table (for other controllers)                      If the bit = 1 in a chassis mount controller, the internal diagnostics have detected a CPU failure. If the bit = 1 in any controller other than a chassis mount, then the Coil Use table does not match the coils in user logic.</p>
6	<p>Displays the number of segments in ladder logic; a binary number is shown:</p>

Continued on next page

## A Special STAT Instruction, Continued

Words 1...12,  
Continued

Word	Description
7	<p>Displays the address of the end-of-logic (EOL) pointer:</p> 
8 and 9	Not used.
10	<p>Uses its two least significant bits to display RUN/LOAD/DEBUG status:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">If the bit is set to 1, then the condition is TRUE.</p> 
11	Not used.
12	<p>Indicates the health of the ATI module:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">If the bit is set to 1, then the condition is TRUE.</p> 

*Continued on next page*

## A Special STAT Instruction, Continued

---

**Words 13...20**

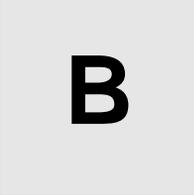
Words 13...20 are available only for the 171 CCS 760 00 and 171 CCS 760 10 Momentum M1 Processor Adapters to indicate the status of I/OBus modules controlled over the I/O Bus network.

<b>This Word...</b>	<b>Indicates the Status of These I/O Modules...</b>
13	1...16
14	17...32
15	33...48
16	49...64
17	65...80
18	81...96
19	97...112
20	113...128

---

---

## Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes



# B

---

### Run LED Flash Pattern and Error Codes

The following table lists the flash pattern of the Run LED on the TSX Momentum Processor Adapters. It also lists the associated codes (in hex format).

Number of Blinks	Code (hex)	Error
Continuous	0000	Requested Kernel mode
2	080B	ram error during sizing
	080C	run output active failed
	082E	MB command handler stack error
	0835	Main loop broken
	0836	Power down / Power holdup
	0837	Power down reset absent
3	072B	master config write bad

*Continued on next page*

**Run LED Flash  
Pattern and Error  
Codes, Continued**

Number of Blinks	Code (hex)	Error
4	0607	modbus cmd-buffer overflow
	0608	modbus cmd-length is zero
	0609	modbus abort command error
	0614	mbp bus interface error
	0615	bad mbp response opcode
	0616	timeout waiting for mbp
	0617	mbp out of synchronization
	0618	mbp invalid path
	0619	page 0 not paragraph aligned
	061E	bad external uart hardware
	061F	bad external uart interrupt
	0620	bad receive comm state
	0621	bad transmit comm state
	0622	bad comm state trn_asc
	0623	bad comm state trn_rtu
	0624	bad comm state rcv_rtu
	0625	bad comm state rcv_asc
	0626	bad modbus state tmr0_evt
	0627	bad modbus state trn-int
	0628	bad modbus state rcv-int
0631	bad interrupt	
0637	Bad I/OBus transmit state	
0638	Bad I/OBus receive state	
5	0503	ram address test error
	052D	P.O.S.T BAD MPU ERROR
6	0402	ram data test error

*Continued on next page*

**Run LED Flash  
Pattern and Error  
Codes, Continued**

---

<b>Number of Blinks</b>	<b>Code (hex)</b>	<b>Error</b>
7	0300	EXEC not loaded
	0301	EXEC Checksum
8	8001	Kernal prom checksum error
	8003	unexpected exec return
	8005	Flash program / erase error
	8007	Watchdog timeout event

---



---

# Index



---

## Numerics

- 171 CCC 760 10 Processor Adapter 38
  - Key features 37
  - LEDs 38
  - Specifications 38
- 171 CCC 780 10 Processor Adapter
  - Changing protocol to RS485 215 43
  - Key features 43
  - LEDs 44
  - Need to change protocol to RS485 112
  - Specifications 44
- 171 CCS 700 00 Processor Adapter 28
  - Key features 28
  - LEDs 29
  - Specifications 29
- 171 CCS 700 10 Processor Adapter 31
  - Key features 31
  - LEDs 32
  - Specifications 32
- 171 CCS 760 00 Processor Adapter 34
  - Key features 34
  - LEDs 35
  - Specifications 35
- 171 CCS 780 00 Processor Adapter 40
  - Changing protocol to RS485 217
  - Key features 40
  - LEDs 41
  - Need to change protocol to RS485 112
  - Specifications 41

- 172 JNN 210 32 Serial Option Adapter 57
  - LED indicator 59
  - Specifications 61
  - Limitations when used with certain processor adapters 110
- 172 PNN 210 22 Modbus Plus Option Adapter 64
  - LED indicator 65
  - Modbus Plus address switches 66
  - Specifications 67
- 172 PNN 260 22 Redundant Modbus Plus Option Adapter 71
  - LED indicators 71
  - Modbus Plus address switches 73
  - Ports 73
  - Specifications 74

## A

### Assembly

- Processor Adapter and I/O base 79
- Processor Adapter and Option Adapter 85
- Processor Adapter, Option Adapter and I/O base 89

## C

### Communication ports

- Configuring with Modsoft 208
- Delay parameter 216

- Stop bit 210
- Configuring with Concept 285
- Delay parameter 318
- Stop bit 317

## I

- InterBus module identifier codes 231
- InterBus module identifier codes 342
- I/OBus network
  - Accessing an I/O map screen 226
  - Editing an I/O map 228
  - Editing an I/O map 341
  - Supporting an I/O map 224
  - Supporting an I/O map 338
- I/OBus port 23
- I/OBus port 148

## L

- Ladder logic 381
- Local I/O
  - I/O mapping with Modsoft 223
  - I/O mapping with Concept 337

## M

- Modbus Plus
  - Addresses 174
  - As a supervisory network 134
  - Cabling schemes 163
  - Cluster mode 163
  - Network types 159
  - New features for Momentum 158
  - Peer Cop 176
  - Operating environment 133
  - Standard cabling schemes 161
- Modbus Plus port 158
  - Cable accessories 167
  - Pinouts and wiring diagrams 170
- Modbus Plus network architecture
  - Address strategy 240, 258
  - Address strategy 364, 353
  - Two types 233

- Modbus Port 1 22
  - Auto-logout feature 105
  - Cable accessories 106
  - Connector type 103
  - Diagram 103
  - Parameters 104
- Modbus Port 2 23
  - Auto-logout 59
  - Autologout feature with RS232 112
  - Changing protocol from RS232 to RS485 217
  - Changing protocol from RS232 to RS485 320
  - Parameters 111
- Modbus RS485 110
  - Cable 117
  - Connectors 122
  - Four-wire cabling schemes 113
  - Pinouts 125
  - Terminating devices 124
  - Two-wire cabling schemes 116

## O

- Option Adapter
  - Batteries
    - Reserving and monitoring a battery coil in Modsoft 200
    - Reserving and monitoring a battery coil in Concept 305
  - Configuring in Modsoft 199
  - Configuring in Concept 304
  - Communication ports 56
  - Purpose 55
  - Installation 95

## P

- Peer Cop 176
  - Concept
    - Accessing Peer Cop dialog box 347
    - Health timeout 350
    - Last Value setting 351
    - Specifying references for input data 356

- Specifying references for output data 360
- Modsoft
  - Accessing a node 241
  - Accessing configuration extension screen 235
  - Adjusting amount of extension memory 235
  - Defining a link 241
  - On Error setting 244
  - Specifying references for input data 248
  - Timeout 244
- Processor Adapter
  - Configuring with Modsoft 183
  - Configuring with Concept 286
  - Default configuration parameters in Modsoft 188
  - Default configuration parameters in Concept 292
  - Flash RAM 24
  - Front panel diagram 28
  - Internal memory 24
  - Power supply 26

## R

- Run LED Flash Patterns and Error Codes 393

## S

- Saving to Flash
  - Concept
    - Procedure 376
  - Modsoft
    - Options 280
    - Procedure 281
    - Purpose 279
- Stop bit 112

## T

- Time-of-day clock 55
  - Reading in Modsoft 207
  - Reading in Concept 312
  - Setting the time in Modsoft 204
  - Setting time in Concept 311
  - Setting up in Modsoft 202
  - Setting up in Concept 308



Modicon, Square D and Telemecanique are PL C brand names from Schneider. These products are sold in the US by Square D, in Canada, Latin America, Europe, Africa, Asia/Pacific and Middle East by Schneider, in Germany by AEG Schneider Electric, in China and Persian Gulf by Schneider Electric, in South Africa by ASA Systems Automation, in Austria by Omline.

Schneider Electric, Inc  
One High Street  
North Andover, MA 01845  
Tel: (1) 508-794-0800  
Fax: (1) 508-975-9400

Schneider Electric GmbH  
Steinheimer Strasse 117  
D-63500 Seligenstadt  
Tel: (49) 6182 81-2884  
Fax: (49) 6182 81-2880

Schneider Electric S.A.  
245, Route des Lucioles-BP147  
F-06903 Sophia-Antipolis Cedex  
Tel: (33) 92 98 20 00  
Fax: (33) 93 65 57 15